BPM 1020 - MAINTENANCE FOR RESIDENTIAL PROPERTY MANAGEMENT (PHILLIPS AND ROBERTS, 2021)

LibreTexts™

BPM 1020 - Maintenance for Residential Property Management

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXOne and are supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

About this Book

This page is a draft and is under active development.

Summary

Principles of Accounting is designed to meet the scope and sequence requirements of a two-semester accounting course that covers the fundamentals of financial and managerial accounting. Due to the comprehensive nature of the material, we are offering the book in two volumes. This book is specifically designed to appeal to both accounting and non-accounting majors, exposing students to the core concepts of accounting in familiar ways to build a strong foundation that can be applied across business fields. Each chapter opens with a relatable real-life scenario for today's college student. Thoughtfully designed examples are presented throughout each chapter, allowing students to build on emerging accounting knowledge. Concepts are further reinforced through applicable connections to more detailed business processes. Students are immersed in the "why" as well as the "how" aspects of accounting in order to reinforce concepts and promote comprehension over rote memorization.

Senior Contributing Authors

- Mitchell Franklin, LeMoyne College (Financial Accounting)
- Patty Graybeal, University of Michigan-Dearborn (Managerial Accounting)
- Dixon Cooper, Ouachita Baptist University

Contributing Authors

- LuAnn Bean, Florida Institute of Technology
- Ian Burt, Niagara University
- Shana Carr, San Diego City College
- David T. Collins, Bellarmine University
- Shawna Coram, Florida State College at Jacksonville
- Kenneth Creech, Briar Cliff University
- Alan Czyzewski, Indiana State University
- Michael Gauci, Florida Atlantic University
- Cindy Greenman, Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University
- Michael Haselkorn, Bentley University
- Christine Irujo, Westfield State University
- Cynthia Johnson, University of Arkansas at Little Rock
- Cynthia Khanlarian, North Carolina Agricultural and Technical State University
- Terri Lukshaitis, Ferris State University
- Debra Luna, Southwest University
- Bill Nantz, Houston Community College
- Tatyana Pashnyak, Bainbridge State College
- Brian Pusateri, University of Scranton
- Ellen Rackas, Muhlenberg College
- Marianne Rexer, Wilkes University
- Roslyn Roberts, California State University, Sacramento
- Rebecca Rosner, Long Island University
- Jeffrey J. Sabolish, University of Michigan-Flint
- Jason E. Swartzlander, Bluffton University
- Diane Tanner, University of North Florida
- Mark M. Ulrich, Queensborough Community College
- Janis Weber, University of Louisiana Monroe
- Linda Williams, Tidewater Community College
- Darryl Woolley, University of Idaho

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Maintenance Management Systems

1.1: Maintenance Categories

Maintenance procedures can be classified in three basic categories:

Corrective Maintenance is known as **reactive maintenance**. In other words, waiting for something to break down before worrying about repairing or replacing it. While this process may require less expense in manpower, it can contribute to longer than normal downtime while waiting on replacement parts or equipment to arrive, or a need to have an extensive inventory of those replacement parts or equipment on hand.

Preventive Maintenance is also referred to as **scheduled maintenance**. This form of maintenance is based on a time based understanding of when breakdown occurs, when specific preventive measures are not taken. Preventive maintenance focuses on replacing or repairing worn or expended system parts before failure occurs, extending the life of mechanical systems. Common scheduled maintenance tasks include changing filters and lubricants, cleaning and flushing of contaminants, correcting tolerance discrepancies, and other items that keep machinery and buildings operating at their peak efficiency.

Predictive Maintenance relies on regular analysis of data collected from in-service system equipment and components to determine when maintenance will be required or a time when failure will occur. Predictive maintenance procedures often include **computerized maintenance management systems (CMMS)** to gather information from data loggers or sensors which are placed on equipment to track temperature, humidity, speed, pressure, voltage, amperage, flow rates, occupancy, and a multitude of other factors related to the performance of a piece of equipment or building system. When a data logger records a measurement that is outside of a set parameter, the computer sends an alarm that can be programmed to perform many functions to include but not limited to: create a work order, send out digital information to maintenance staff via text or email, and shut down equipment to prevent catastrophic failure.

Although initial setup of CCMS systems can be quite costly, over time this form of maintenance can result in significant savings from not having to keep a large inventory of replacement parts on hand, efficient scheduling of people and ordering of parts, and less unplanned failure of equipment. CCMS systems are commonly found in commercial buildings such as hospitals, office and institutional buildings, and resorts.

1.2: Work Order Process

Commercial Maintenance Process

Service Request

A service request can be occupant or operator generated due to a system failure or for preventive/predictive maintenance scheduling.

- **Work Order-** Informs technician of the failure or maintenance procedure for corrective action.
- **Inspection-** Technician assessment for restoring failed component or service of equipment to operable or optimal condition.
- **Repair**- Process of restoring failed component or equipment to operable or original condition.

Repairs often requires the acquisition of parts or materials that may not be immediately available. This may result in **“down time”** for a necessary piece of equipment or facility component until the item can be obtained. In order to restore operation in a timely manner, it is important to obtain the parts that are right for the job by knowing where to look and knowing how to properly describe the item(s) when ordering.

Service Call Procedures

A service call is required if a building or equipment operator finds something wrong with a building system or appliance’s operation.

There are a few steps to follow for a successful service call:

• Display a professional, courteous, and intelligent attitude when dealing with customers.
• Don’t track dirt or mud into the service location.
• Make sure your tools do not cause damage to walls, floors, furniture, or other items.
• Be prepared to show some identification.
• Find the problem.
• Fix the problem.
• Explain what you found and how you fixed it to the customer.
• Fill in the appropriate paperwork in a legible manner.
• Make one last inspection of the work area.
• Clean up any mess you made.

1.3: Parts and Material Resources

Maintenance technicians have numerous resources at their disposal to obtain repair instructions, replacement parts, and other resources that can contribute to safe, successful, and timely repairs.

Manufacture and Vendor Parts and Repair Resources

- **Owner's Manual**- General customer orientation of equipment or component. Often contains safety precautions, operating instructions, basic troubleshooting and warranty information.
- **Technical/Service Manual**- Professional field technician repair reference. Contains complete troubleshooting instructions, schematics, and technical information related to the manufacturer.
- **Vendor**- Store or source where part might be obtained. Many vendors carry items from multiple manufactures, however, many manufactures may act as sole distributors for their own items.
- **Catalog/Internet**- Manufacturer or vendor itemization of available parts, description, and price.

Part Types

- **Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM)**- manufactures products or components that are purchased by a company and retailed under that purchasing company's brand name.
- **Replacement (aftermarket)**- Item made to perform the same function as original part, not manufactured by original equipment manufacturer.
- **Universal**- part made by a manufacturer that may replace similar parts on multiple manufacturers' items or models of equipment.

Procurement

In many commercial settings, the technician is required to provide a purchase order (PO) to a vendor in order to obtain the necessary items to perform the service.

Requisition- The service technician must submit a request (requisition) to their employer or business office for the purchase of the required item(s). The requisition most often requires an accurate description of the item(s), price, part number, quantity, vendor, and vendor contact information.

Purchase Order- Once the technician has submitted the requisition for materials, the business office will generate a purchase order. This is an agreement between the purchaser and vendor for placing the purchase on a payment account. The business office will, in most all cases, issue a purchase limit or specified amount to be attached to the order based on previously quoted prices from the vendor.

Ordering Parts & Materials

When creating requisitions or ordering parts, equipment, and building materials from vendors, **be specific.** If any of the data on a replacement part does not match the original manufacturer's requirements, the part/s may not provide adequate service for the application and could potentially damage other components of equipment and machinery. Manufacturers' information is often available on the **manufacturer's tag** or **nameplate** found on equipment, motors, pumps, propellers, blower motors, and other components. This information can be key to identifying and finding parts that are specific to an individual piece of equipment. Technical manuals provide more in-depth information, can be helpful in identifying specific parts and repair procedures, but do not always offer a way to obtain parts for repairs. Remember that manufacturers and parts vendors do not stock repair items forever. After production runs of various items end, the parts resource no longer carries specific parts and the item being repaired becomes obsolete or beyond economic repair (a similar item can be purchased at a cost that is cheaper than repairing the broken one).

Some of the most important things that can help a technician find the parts they need for repairs can be found on equipment nameplates or tags, or even on individual equipment parts and components include:

- **Brand/Manufacturer**- Maker or registered trademark holder
- **Serial Number**- Unique to the individual piece of equipment, often associated with ownership
- **Model**- Model numbers can signify a difference in power, size, accessories, or a wide variety of other options found in the terminology in this chapter
- **Part number**- Specific to the part, can often be cross-referenced to replacement and universal parts numbers

- **Capacity or Rating**
  - **Horsepower**- Associated with gas and electric motors and appliances
  - **Torque/Ft. Lbs.**- Amount of output force
  - **Speed**- RPM/ Variable/Fixed; Tool, motors, saw blades
  - **Voltage**- Alternating or direct current requirement
  - **Ohms/ Impedance**- resistance
  - **Amps**- Maximum and minimum or operational current
  - **Wattage**- Power capacity of electric appliances
  - **Microfarad/Picofarad**- Capacitors
  - **British Thermal Units (BTUs)/Tons**- Heating, air conditioning and refrigeration equipment
  - **Weight**- Lift or support limits
  - **Phase**- Electrical equipment; single or three phase
  - **Cycle/Stroke**- Gas motors
- **Descriptive Terms**
  - **Gauge**- Thickness of sheet metal, wiring conductors
  - **Swing**- Door and window direction of travel as they open
  - **Pane**- thickness of glass
  - **Temper**- hardened such as steel or glass
  - **Finish**- metal finishes, paints, stains,
  - **Sheen**- gloss, semi-gloss, matte, etc.
  - **Rotation**- clockwise/counterclockwise; fan and saw blades, threaded fasteners
  - **Coarse/Fine**- Screws, sandpaper, and other textured items

Quantities

Specific amounts, quantities, weights and sizes are always necessary for ordering parts and materials:

- **Length/Width/ Height/Thickness**- anything with proportional size
- **Diameter/ Circumference/ Radius/Inside or Outside Diameter (I.D., O.D.)**- tubing, plumbing, fan blades, motor shaft sizes, filters, etc.
- **Schedule**- PVC & ABS pipe wall thickness
- **Area**- square ft. square mile sheet goods, land (acre)
- **Board Foot**- lumber, 144 cubic inches or 12″ x 12″ x 1″
- **Gross**- Twelve dozen (144)
- **Bag**- contains a marked weight or item quantity
- **Bundle**- contains a marked weight or item quantity
- **Ply**- amount of layers an item has. Tires, plywood, paper products
- **Roll**- Paper products, asphalt roofing, plastic sheet goods, cloth and textile materials
- **Unit**- lumber, liquids, cased materials. Can imply a single item or a specific amount packaged for bulk purchase.
- **Yard/Cu. Ft. /Sq. Yd.**- concrete, fill, fertilizer
- **Per inch/ foot/yd./etc.**- lumber, wire, chain

Weights & Measures

Liquid Measures- pint, quart, gallon, liter, etc.
Dry Measures- gram, ounce, pound, ton, etc.

Standardized Measurement

Metric: European decimal equivalency; centimeters, millimeters, meters
SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers): American standard, fractional
Threads per inch (TPI): Bolts, nuts, and other fasteners
National Pipe Thread (NPT): tapered thread for plumbing applications

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Building Maintenance and Conservation

2.1: Building Maintenance and Conservation

Introduction

Buildings present a challenge and an opportunity for sustainable development. According to the most recent available Annual Energy Outlook from the U.S. Environmental Information Administration, buildings account for about 39% of the carbon dioxide emissions, 40% of primary energy use, and 72% of the electricity consumption in the U.S. Additional information from the U.S. Geological Survey indicates that 14% of the potable water consumption occurs in buildings.

Globally, buildings are the largest contributors to carbon dioxide emissions, above transportation and then industry. The construction of buildings requires many materials that are mined, grown, or produced and then transported to the building site. Buildings require infrastructure including roads, utility lines, water and sewer systems. People need to be able to get to and from buildings to work, live, or take advantage of the services provided within them. They need to provide a safe and comfortable environment for the people that inhabit them.

Table 2.1.1 Impacts of the Built Environment Source: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency www.epa.gov/greenbuilding/pubs/about.htm

Aspects of Built Environment	Consumption	Environmental Effects	Ultimate Effects
Siting	Energy	Waste	Harm to human health
Design	Water	Air Pollution	Environmental degradation
Construction	Materials	GHG emissions	Loss of resources
Operation	Natural resources	Water pollution	
Maintenance		Indoor pollution	
Renovation		Heat islands	
Deconstruction		Stormwater runoff	
		Noise	

It is possible to design and construct fully functional buildings that have far fewer negative environmental impacts than current norms allow. Beyond benefiting the environment, green buildings provide economic benefits including reduced operating costs, expanded markets for green products and services, improved building occupant productivity, and optimized life-cycle performance. Green buildings also offer social benefits that range from protecting occupant comfort and health, to better aesthetic qualities, less strain on local infrastructure, and overall improvement in quality of life.

In 1994, a group of experts was brought together by the National Renewable Energy Laboratory (NREL) to develop a pathway and specific principles for sustainable development. According to these principles, building should be:

- **Ecologically Responsive**: The design of human habitat shall recognize that all resources are limited, and will respond to the patterns of natural ecology. Land plans and building designs will include only those with the least disruptive impact upon the natural ecology of the earth. Density must be most intense near neighborhood centers where facilities are most accessible.
- **Healthy, Sensible Buildings:** The design of human habitat must create a living environment that will be healthy for all its occupants. Buildings should be of appropriate human scale in a non-sterile, aesthetically pleasing environment. Building design must respond to toxicity of materials, care with EMF, lighting efficiency and quality, comfort requirements and resource efficiency. Buildings should be organic, integrate art, natural materials, sunlight, green plants, energy efficiency, low noise levels and water. They should not cost more than current conventional buildings.
- **Socially Just:** Habitats shall be equally accessible across economic classes.
- **Culturally Creative:** Habitats will allow ethnic groups to maintain individual cultural identities and neighborhoods while integrating into the larger community. All population groups shall have access to art, theater and music.
- **Beautiful:** Beauty in a habitat environment is necessary for the soul development of human beings. It is yeast for the ferment of individual creativity. Intimacy with the beauty and numinous mystery of nature must be available to enliven our sense of the sacred.
- **Physically and Economically Accessible:** All sites within the habitat shall be accessible and rich in resources to those living within walkable (or wheelchair-able) distance.

- **Evolutionary:** Habitats' design shall include continuous re-evaluation of premises and values, shall be demographically responsive and flexible to change over time to support future user needs. Initial designs should reflect our society's heterogeneity and have a feedback system.

What is meant by a sustainable or green building? The U.S. EPA defines green building as “the practice of creating structures and using processes that are environmentally responsible and resource-efficient throughout a building's life-cycle from siting to design, construction, operation, maintenance, renovation and deconstruction. This practice expands and complements the classical building design concerns of economy, utility, durability, and comfort.” (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2010)

The benefits of sustainable buildings have already been documented. These buildings can reduce energy use by 24-50%, carbon dioxide emissions by 33-39%, water use by 40%, and solid waste by 70% (Turner & Frankel, 2008; Kats, Alevantis, Berman, Mills, & Perlman, 2003; Fowler & Rauch, 2008). Green building occupants are healthier and more productive than their counterparts in other buildings, and this is important because in the U.S, people spend an average of 90% or more of their time indoors (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1987). Green buildings tend to have improved indoor air quality and lighting.

There are also numerous perceived business benefits to green buildings, including decreased operating costs and increased building value, return on investment, occupancy ratio, and rent ratio.

Materials and Methods of Construction

It is frequently stated that the most sustainable building is the one that is not built. This does not mean that we should not have buildings, but rather that we should make the most of our existing buildings. Those buildings already have the infrastructure and have utilized many materials for their construction.

A great deal of energy goes into making building materials. By volume, the major materials used within the U.S. construction industry are crushed rock, gravel, sand, cement, cement concrete, asphalt concrete, timber products, clay brick, concrete block, drywall, roofing materials, steel, aluminum, copper and other metals, plastics, paper, paints, glues, and other chemical products. The building industry has been the largest consumer of materials in the US for nearly 100 years (Horvath, 2004).

The manufacturing of cement, for instance, is an enormous producer of greenhouse gas emissions. Cement is made of about 85% lime by mass, which is mixed with other ingredients such as shale, clay, and slate. It is formed into an inorganic adhesive by heating the ingredients to a temperature of 1450 °C (2640 °F), and then grinding the product into a powder. Cement comprises about 15% of concrete, which is made by mixing cement with sand, small rocks, and water. Because it requires so much energy, the manufacture of cement is estimated to account for as much as 5% of global anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions (Humphreys & Mahasenan, 2002).

Construction of buildings is also related to deforestation. Our consumption of wood to build buildings and furniture over the centuries has resulted in the clearing of many old-world forests and tropical forests. Trees are harvested not only for fuel but also for construction material and to clear land for construction.

The demolition of old buildings to make way for new and construction projects themselves generate huge amounts of waste. Careful deconstruction of buildings allows for reuse of materials in future construction projects or for recycling of materials into new building (and other) products. Deconstruction creates economic advantages by lower building removal costs due to value of materials and avoided disposal costs, reduces impact to site on soil and vegetation, conserves landfill space, and creates jobs due to the labor-intensity of the process.

A 1998 EPA study of building-related construction and demolition (C&D) debris generation in the U.S. found that an estimated 136 million tons of building-related C&D debris were generated in 1996, the equivalent to 2.8 pounds per person per day. 43% of the waste (58 million tons per year) was generated from residential sources and 57% (78 million tons per year) was from nonresidential sources. Building demolitions accounted for 48% of the waste stream, or 65 million tons per year; renovations accounted for 44%, or 60 million tons per year; and 8 percent, or 11 million tons per year, was generated at construction sites.

Even when deconstruction is not possible, the waste can be recycled by sorting the materials after they are collected and taken to a waste transfer station. Since new construction and renovation requires the input of many materials, this is an opportunity to utilize products that enhance the sustainability of the building. These products may be made of recycled content, sustainably grown and harvested wood and pulp materials, products that have low emissions, and products that are sourced locally. These products enhance the sustainability of the building by supporting local economies and reducing the fuel needed to transport them long distances.

Energy-saving Building Features

Energy efficient measures have been around a long time and are known to reduce the use of energy in residential and commercial properties. Improvements have been made in all of these areas and are great opportunities for further innovation. Green buildings incorporate these features to reduce the demand for heating and cooling.

Insulation

The building should be well insulated and sealed so that the conditioned air doesn't escape to the outside. Insulation can be installed in floors, walls, attics and/or roofs. It helps to have more even temperature distribution and increased comfort as well.

High-performance Windows

Several factors are important to the performance of a window (see Figure 2.1.1):

- Thermal windows are at least double-paned and vacuum-filled with inert gas. This gas provides insulation
- Improved framing materials, weather stripping and warm edge spacers reduce heat gain and loss
- Low-E coating block solar heat gain in the summer and reflect radiant heat indoors during the winter

Sealing of Holes and Cracks

Sealing holes and cracks in a building's envelope as well as the heating and cooling duct systems can reduce drafts, moisture, dust, pollen, and noise. In addition, it improves comfort and indoor air quality at the same time it saves energy and reduces utility and maintenance costs.

Figure 2.1.1 A High-performance Window Source: *http://www.energystar.gov/ia/new_homes/features/Windows_062906.pdf*

Heating Ventilation and Air-conditioning (HVAC)

A large part of the energy consumption and thus environmental impact of a building is the building heating, ventilation and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems that are used to provide comfortable temperature, humidity and air supply levels. Buildings must be designed to meet local energy code requirements, but these are often not as aggressive targets as they could be to demand more energy efficiency. In the U.S. ENERGY Star provides guidance and benchmarking to help set more aggressive goals.

There are many ways HVAC systems can be designed to be more efficient. Variable air volume (VAV) systems increase air flow to meet the increase or decrease in heat gains or losses within the area served. Having fans power down when not needed saves energy, as does reducing the amount of air that needs to be conditioned and also reduces the need for reheat systems. These systems are used to warm up an area if the cooled air supply is making an area too cold. VAV systems can generally handle this by reducing air supply. All of this does need to be balanced by making sure there is enough fresh air supply to meet the needs of the number of occupants in a building. Otherwise, it will feel stuffy due to lack of air flow and oxygen.

Also using automated controls, whether it is a programmable thermostat in your home or a building automation system (BAS) that uses computers to control HVAC settings based on schedules and occupancy, can significantly reduce energy consumption.

The equipment itself can be made more energy efficient. For instance new home furnaces range in efficiency from 68-97%. Ideally, the most energy efficient furnace would be installed in a new home (U.S. Department of Energy, 2011).

Passive Solar Design

This type of architectural design does not require mechanical heating and cooling of a building. Instead it uses heating and cooling strategies that have been used historically such as natural ventilation, solar heat gain, solar shading and efficient insulation. Figure 2.1.2 shows some of these elements. In the winter solar radiation is trapped by the greenhouse effect of south facing windows (north in the southern hemisphere) exposed to full sun. Heat is trapped, absorbed and stored by materials with high thermal mass (usually bricks or concrete) inside the house. It is released at night when needed to warm up the building as it loses heat to the cooler outdoors. Shading provided by trees or shades keeps the sun out in the hot months.

Figure 2.1.2 Passive Solar Design Source: www.yourhome.gov.au/technical/fs45.html#what

Lighting

Well-designed lighting can minimize the use of energy. This includes enhancing day lighting (natural light), through windows, skylights, etc. Using energy efficient lighting such as compact fluorescent light bulbs and LEDs (light-emitting diodes) can save

energy as well. Using occupancy sensors also means that lights will only be on when someone is in a room. See Module 13.4 for more energy-saving technologies that can be incorporated into buildings.

Water

Water usage can be minimized by using low-flow fixtures in restrooms, bathrooms, and kitchens. Dual-flush toilets allow for the user to have the option of select less water (e.g. for liquid waste) and more water (e.g. for solid waste) when flushing (See Figure 2.1.3). These have long been in use in Europe, the Middle East and other places where water conservation is paramount. Fresh water consumption can be reduced further through the use of greywater systems. These systems recycle water generated from activities such as hand washing, laundry, bathing, and dishwashing for irrigation of grounds and even for flushing toilets.

Figure 2.1.3 Dual-flush Toilet This toilet has two flush controls on the water tank. Pushing only the circular button releases half as much (0.8 gallons, 3 liters) water as pushing the outer button. Source: By Eugenio Hansen, OFS (Own work) [CC-BY-SA-3.0],via Wikimedia Commons

Integrated Design

Integrated design is a design process for a building that looks at the whole building, rather than its individual parts, for opportunities to reduce environmental impact. Incremental measures would include those approaches described above. To accomplish integrated design of a building, all parties involved in the design--architects, engineers, the client and other stakeholders--must work together. This collaborative approach results in a more harmonious coordination of the different components of a building such as the site, structure, systems, and ultimate use.

Standards of Certification

Most countries establish certain standards to assure consistency, quality and safety in the design and construction of buildings. Green building standards provide guidelines to architects, engineers, building operators and owners that enhance building sustainability. Various green building standards have originated in different countries around the world, with differing goals, review processes and rating. In this section we will discuss a few examples.

A good certification system should be developed with expert feedback. In addition, it should be transparent, measurable, relevant and comparable.

- Expert-based: Was input acquired from experts and professionals in the fields of design, construction, building operation and sustainability?
- Transparent: Is information readily available to the public about how buildings are rated?
- Measurable: Does the rating system use measurable characteristics to demonstrate the extent of sustainable design incorporated into the building? Does the system use life-cycle analysis to evaluate?
- Relevance: Does the rating system provide a “whole building evaluation” rather than an evaluation of an individual design feature?
- Comparable: Is the rating system able to compare building types, location, years, or different sustainable design features?

Comparison of Certification Systems *Source: Klein-Banai, C.*

System	Year established	Country of origin	Trans- parent	Expert-based	Measurable/ Uses LCA	Relevance	Comparable
BREEAM	1990	UK	√*	-	√	√	√
Green Globes	1996	Canada	√	√	√/√	√	√
LEED	2000	US	√	√	√/√ V 3.0	√	√
CASBEE	2001	Japan	√	√	√/√	√	√
ENERGY STAR	1999	US	√	√#	√	Only energy	√

*Only assessment prediction check lists available publicly
#Benchmarking tool developed by US EPA

Table 2.1.2 Comparison of Certification Systems Source: Klein-Banai, C.

System	Year Established	Country of Origin	Transparent	Expert Based	Measurable/ Uses LCA	Relevance
BREEAM	1990	UK	√*	-	√	√
Green Globes	1996	Canada	√	√	√/√	√
LEED	2000	US	√	√	√/√ (v3.0)	√
CASBEE	2001	Japan	√	√	√/√	√
ENERGY STAR	1999	US	√	√**	√	Only energy

* Only assessment prediction check lists available publicly
** Benchmarking tool developed by US EPA

Conclusion

The built environment is the largest manifestation of human life on the planet. Buildings have been essential for the survival of the human race, protecting us from the elements and forces of nature. However, they also consume a lot of material, energy and water, and they occupy land that might otherwise be undeveloped or used for agriculture. There are many ways to reduce that impact by building to a higher standard of conservation and reuse. There are a number of systems that can help architects, engineers, and planners to achieve those standards, and they should be selected with a full awareness of their limitations.

References

1. Fowler, K.M. & Rauch, E.M. (2008). Assessing green building performance. A post occupancy evaluation of 12 GSA buildings. (U.S. General Services Administration). PNNL-17393 Pacific Northwest National Laboratory Richland, Washington. Retrieved from www.gsa.gov/graphics/pbs/GSA_...ull_Report.pdf
2. Horvath, A. (2004). Construction materials and the environment. Annual Review of Energy and the Environment, 29 , 181-204.
3. Humphreys, K. & Mahasenan, M. (2002). Toward a Sustainable Cement Industry. Substudy 8, Climate Change. World Business Council for Sustainable Development. Retrieved from www.wbcsd.org/web/publication...telle-full.pdf
4. Kats, G., Alevantis, L., Berman, A., Mills, E. & Perlman, J. (2003). The costs and financial benefits of green building: A report to California's sustainable building task force. Retrieved from www.usgbc.org/Docs/News/News477.pdf
5. Turner, C. & Frankel, M. (2008). Energy performance of LEED for New Construction Buildings, Final Report. Retrieved from http://newbuildings.org/sites/defaul...al_3-4-08b.pdf
6. U.S. Department of Energy. (2011). Energy savers: Furnaces and boilers. Retrieved from www.energysavers.gov/your_hom.../mytopic=12530
7. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. (1987). The total exposure assessment methodology (TEAM) study (EPA 600/S6-87/002). Retrieved from exposurescience.org/pub/repor..._book_1987.pdf
8. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. (1998). Characterization of building-related construction and demolition debris in the United States. (Report No. EPA530-R-98-010). Retrieved from www.epa.gov/wastes/hazard/gen...sqg/cd-rpt.pdf
9. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. (2010). Green Building Basic Information. Retrieved from www.epa.gov/greenbuilding/pubs/about.htm.

Review Questions

1. What are the positive and negative impacts that buildings have on the environment and society?
2. How can those impacts be reduced?
3. What would be the advantages and disadvantages of demolishing an old building and replacing it with a new, highly "sustainable" building vs. renovating an old building to new standards?

Glossary

Deconstruction

The selective dismantling or removal of materials from buildings prior to or instead of conventional demolition.

Envelope

The physical barrier between the interior and exterior of a building including the walls, roof, foundation, and windows.

Greywater

The water generated from activities such as handwashing, laundry, bathing, and dishwashing that can be recycled on-site to be used for irrigation of grounds and even for flushing toilets.

Low-emissions

Materials that have little to no volatile organic compounds and other toxic chemicals that are released into the environment after installation.

Thermal Mass

The ability of a material to absorb heat energy. High density materials like concrete, bricks and tiles need a lot of heat to change their temperature and thus have a high thermal mass. Lightweight materials such as wood have a low thermal mass.

Contributions from

Prof. Augustus Roberts, Prince George's Commuity College

2.2: Conservation Policy

As we finish this chapter on energy and work, it is relevant to draw some distinctions between two sometimes misunderstood terms in the area of energy use. As has been mentioned elsewhere, the "*law of the conservation of energy*" is a very useful principle in analyzing physical processes. It is a statement that cannot be proven from basic principles, but is a very good bookkeeping device, and no exceptions have ever been found. It states that the total amount of energy in an isolated system will always remain constant. Related to this principle, but remarkably different from it, is the important philosophy of energy conservation. Conservation has to do with seeking to decrease the amount of energy used by an individual or a group through (1) reduced consumption (e.g., turning down thermostats, driving fewer kilometers) and/or (2) increasing conversion efficiencies in the performance of a particular task—such as developing and using more efficient room heaters, cars that have greater miles-per-gallon ratings, energy efficient compact fluorescent lights, energy efficient appliances, etc. Since energy in an isolated system is not destroyed or created, one might wonder why we need to be concerned about our energy resources, since energy is a conserved quantity. The problem is that the final result of most energy transformations is waste heat transfer to the environment and conversion to energy forms no longer useful for doing work. To state it in another way, the potential for energy to produce useful work has been "degraded" in the energy transformation.

A rational energy policy should encourage research by private industry and should provide funding for basic research, ensure fair access to alternative energy sources, encourage the internalization of external cost of fossil fuel energy, and promote the dissemination of information about the costs and benefits of alternative energy sources.

3: Maintenance Staffing

Learning Objectives

- Describe the core functions of human resource management
- Explain how the functions of human resource management contribute to business success

What do all businesses have in common regardless of the product or service? Employees! Unless you are a sole proprietorship, you will have to navigate the process of planning for, recruiting, hiring, training, managing, and possibly firing employees. These responsibilities all fall under the heading of human resource management.

Human resource management (**HRM** or **HR**) is essentially the management of human resources. It is a function in organizations designed to maximize employee performance in service of an employer's strategic objectives. HR is primarily concerned with the management of people within organizations, focusing on policies and on systems. HR departments in organizations typically undertake a number of activities, including employee benefits design, employee recruitment, training and development, performance appraisal, and rewarding (e.g., managing pay and benefit systems). HR also concerns itself with organizational change and industrial relations, that is, the balancing of organizational practices with requirements arising from collective bargaining and from governmental laws.

HR is a product of the human relations movement of the early twentieth century, when researchers began documenting ways of creating business value through the strategic management of the workforce. The function was initially dominated by transactional work, such as payroll and benefits administration, but due to globalization, company consolidation, technological advances, and further research, HR today includes strategic initiatives like talent management, industrial and labor relations, and diversity and inclusion.

Most companies focus on lowering employee turnover and on retaining the talent and knowledge held by their workforce. Hiring a new employee is a costly process and there's always a risk that the incoming employee won't match the performance of the person who previously worked in that position. HR departments strive to offer benefits that will appeal to workers, thus reducing the risk of losing corporate knowledge. Businesses are moving globally and forming more diverse teams. It is the role of human resources to make sure that these teams can function and people are able to communicate cross-culturally and across borders. Due to changes in business, current topics in human resources are diversity and inclusion as well as using technology to advance employee engagement.

In short, HR involves maximizing employee productivity. HR managers may also focus on a particular aspect of HRM, such as recruiting, training, employee relations, or benefits. Recruiting specialists are in charge of finding and hiring top talent. Training and development professionals ensure that employees are trained and receive ongoing professional development. This takes place through training programs, performance evaluations, and reward programs. Employee relations deals with employee concerns and incidents such as policy violations, sexual harassment, and discrimination. Benefit managers develop compensation structures, family-leave programs, discounts, and other benefits available to employees. At the other end of the spectrum are HR generalists who work in all areas or as labor relations representatives for unionized employees.

Core Functions of HR

Human resources (HR) professionals conduct a wide variety of tasks within an organizational structure. A brief rundown on the core functions of human resource departments will be useful in framing the more common activities a human resource professional will conduct. The core functions can be summarized as follows:

Staffing

This includes the activities of hiring new full-time or part-time employees, hiring contractors, and terminating employee contracts.

Staffing activities include:

- Identifying and fulfilling talent needs (through recruitment, primarily)
- Utilizing various recruitment technologies to acquire a high volume and diverse pool of candidates (and to filter them based on position requirements)
- Protecting the company from lawsuits by satisfying legal requirements and maintaining ethical hiring practices
- Writing employee contracts and negotiating salary and benefits
- Terminating employee contracts when necessary

Training and Professional Development

On-boarding new employees and providing professional development opportunities is a key investment for organizations, and HR is charged with seeing that those efforts and resources are well spent and utilized.

Development activities include:

- Training and preparing new employees for their roles
- Providing training opportunities (internal training, educational programs, conferences, etc.) to keep employees up to date in their respective fields
- Preparing management prospects and providing feedback to employees and managers

Compensation

Salary and benefits are also within the scope of human resource management. This includes identifying appropriate compensation based on role, performance, and legal requirements.

Compensation activities include:

- Setting compensation levels to be competitive and appropriate within the market, using benchmarks such as industry standards for a given job function
- Negotiating group health insurance rates, retirement plans, and other benefits with third-party providers
- Discussing raises and other compensation increases and/or decreases with employees in the organization
- Ensuring compliance with legal and cultural expectations when it comes to employee compensation

Safety and Health

HR managers are also responsible for understanding and implementing the best safety and health practices in their industry and addressing any relevant employee concerns.

Safety and health activities include the following:

- Ensuring compliance with legal requirements based on job function for safety measures (i.e., hard hats in construction, available counseling for law enforcement, appropriate safety equipment for chemists, etc.). Many of these requirements are specified by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).
- Implementing new safety measures when laws change in a given industry
- Discussing safety and compliance with relevant government departments
- Discussing safety and compliance with unions

Employee and Labor Relations

Defending employee rights, coordinating with unions, and mediating disagreements between the organization and its human resources are also core HR functions.

Employee and labor relations activities include:

- Mediating disagreements between employees and employers
- Mediating disagreements between employees and other employees
- Investigating claims of harassment and other workplace abuses
- Discussing employee rights with unions, management, and stakeholders

- Acting as the voice of the organization and/or the voice of the employees during any broader organizational issues pertaining to employee welfare

In this module you will explore each of these core functions in greater depth and also learn about the main challenges facing today's HR professional.

? Practice Questions

https://assessments.lumenlearning.co...essments/14510

https://assessments.lumenlearning.co...essments/14511

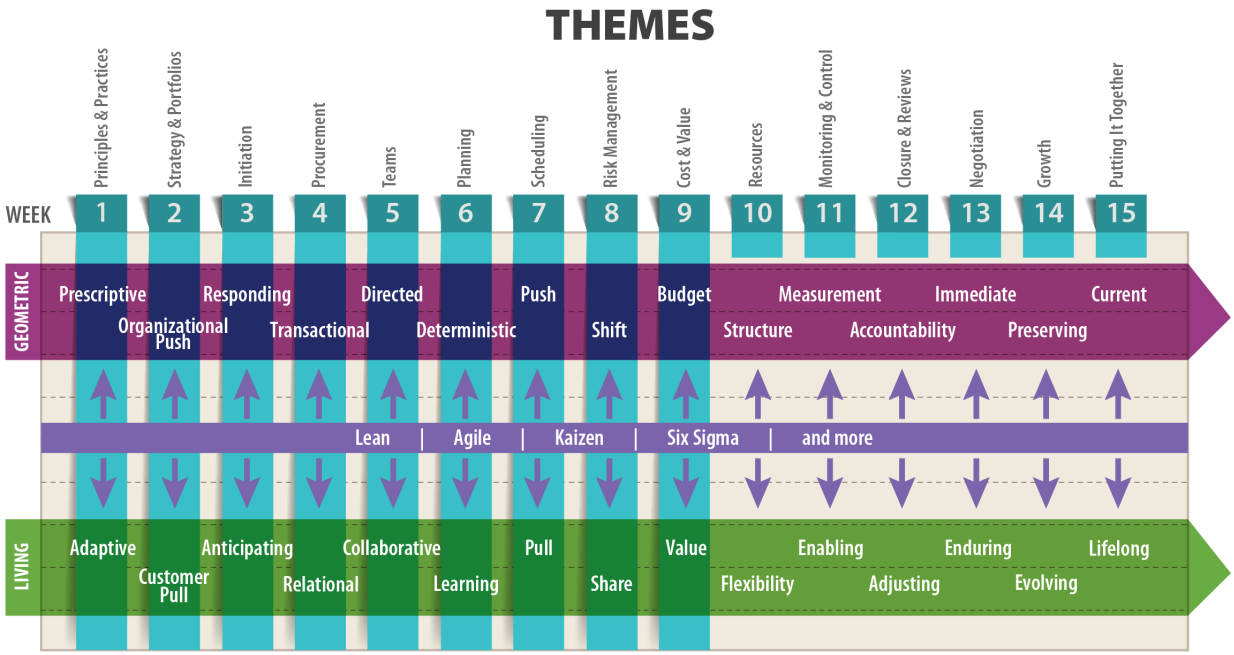
Contributors and Attributions

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Maintenance Processes and Projects

4.1: Managing Project Value, Budgets, and Costs

As obvious as it seems, customer value is defined by no one but the customer.
— Mark Rosenthal (Rosenthal 2009)



Objectives

After reading this chapter, you will be able to

- Define basic terms such as budget, estimate, price, cost, and value
- Discuss the relationship between scope changes and cost and budget overruns
- Explain basic concepts related to budgeting
- Identify different types of costs, and discuss issues related to contingency funds, profit, and cost estimating
- Explain the benefits of target-value design

The Big Ideas in this Lesson

- The project manager's biggest job is delivering value as defined by the customer. A more geometric order focus on the project's budget is also important, but never as important as delivering value as defined by the customer.
- Managing value and cost requires constant engagement with the customer, and a mutual understanding of basic terminology like *budget* and *estimate*.
- When creating an estimate, don't confuse precision with accuracy.

9.1 Talking the Talk

Nearly all projects require money to pay for the required resources—labor, services, and supplies. Project success requires that project managers accurately identify the money needed for a project, acquire the commitment of those funds through a budgeting process, and then successfully manage the expenditure of those funds to achieve the desired outcomes. Your ability to manage stakeholder expectations and commitment related to project funds, combined with your ability to effectively manage the use of those funds to deliver results, will form the basis of your reputation as a reliable project manager.

An important step in ensuring that a project unfolds smoothly is to make sure everyone is using similar terminology. Terminology is important in any technical endeavor, but when it comes to a project's overall value, miscommunications resulting from incorrectly used terms can result in misaligned expectations and erode trust among project participants. Unfortunately, this type of miscommunication is extremely common. So, let's start with some basic terms:

- **budget**: The funds that have been allocated for a project.
- **estimate**: An assessment of the likely budget for a project. An estimate involves counting and costing and is based on ranges and probabilities. Throughout a project, managers and team members are asked to estimate remaining work, cost at completion, and required remaining time. An estimate is a forward projection, using what is known, to identify, as best as possible, the required effort, time, and/or cost for part or all of a project.
- **price: "**A value that will purchase a finite quantity, weight, or other measure of a good or service" (Business Dictionary). The price of a purchased unit is determined by the market.
- **cost:** "An expenditure, usually of money, for the purchase of goods or services" (Law 2016). Practically speaking, project cost (and its relationship to revenue or approved expenditures) is the thing management cares about most. Note that, like all terms, the meaning of "cost" varies somewhat from industry to industry. For example, in product development, the term has three specific meanings: 1) cost to create the product or project; 2) cost to establish a manufacturing cell capable of producing the product; and 3) cost of the final good or service to the market.
- **value:** "The inherent worth of a product as judged by the customer and reflected in its selling price and market demand" (Lean Enterprise Institute 2014). Project managers have to think about two kinds of value—target value, or the value the stakeholders hope to achieve, and delivered value, the value actually generated by the project. You'll learn more about target value later in this lesson.

The following scenario illustrates use of these related concepts. Suppose you set $100 as your monthly gas ***budget*** at the beginning of the year. However, because the current ***price*** of gas is $5.50 a gallon, which is higher than normal, you ***estimate*** that you will actually spend $130 on gas this month. You won't know your ***cost*** for gas until you make your final purchase of the month and add up all the money you spent on fuel. If you wind up having to take an unexpected out-of-town trip, then your cost could be quite a bit higher than your estimate. Or, if the price of gas drops suddenly, say to $1.60 per gallon, your cost will turn out to be lower. In any case, the cost is a simple summation you can do looking backwards. But the ***value*** of your month of travel is something only you can define. If your unexpected out-of-town trip results in some compelling new business opportunities, then you would likely value the trip very highly. But if the weather prevents you from reaching your destination, and then you get lost on the way home, you would probably assign a low value, as experienced, to your misbegotten adventure. Much like in a project, the delivered value may fall short of the target value.

A Word on Price

Note that the precise meaning of the term “price” varies from one industry to the next. In a capital project, the term “price” may refer to total price the customer will pay. In a product development project, the term typically refers to the market price for the good or service, and will often fluctuate based on the volume purchased by a particular customer.

In the real world, these terms do not always mean the same thing to everyone. Worse, people sometimes use them interchangeably or use them to mean different things in different situations. In particular, the terms budget and estimate are often incorrectly used as synonyms, as are the terms cost and price. The end result of this confusion can be a lack of clarity among project partners regarding project goals and constraints. It helps to keep in mind that a budget, an estimate, a target value, and a price are tools to help guide the project team, whereas cost and delivered value are project outcomes that help determine project success. Budgeting and estimating are tools we use to try gauge cost and create value. But they don’t cause cost. Project cost is driven by scope, required resources to accomplish the scope, and related prices.

Delivering value is your primary job as a project manager. But of all the terms related to budgeting a project, the meaning of “value” can be most difficult to grasp. The important thing to remember is that value is determined by the customer, and then flows back to all participants, shaping all project activities. As a project manager, you need to engage with the customer to identify the project’s real value. At the same time, you might also need to take a longer view of value. For example, your organization might be better able to offer value to future customers by carefully studying all projects at completion to capture lessons learned—information that can then be used to improve future projects. The value of this investment of resources may not be apparent to customers, who are only focused on their particular projects, as it mainly benefits future projects. But the overall process benefits all customers in the long run.

As you work on the project’s budget, and perhaps face difficult decisions, you need to focus on tasks that create value. According to the *Lean Lexicon*, a good test for identifying a value-creating task “is to ask if this task could be left out without affecting the product. For example, rework and queue time are unlikely to be judged of any value by customers, while actual design and fabrication steps are” (Lean Enterprise Institute 2014). This article walks through an example of a home construction project that could have turned out much better for the home owners—who were forced to live in a trailer with no running water during the project—if the builder had focused on providing “chunks” of immediately usable value, such as a working bathroom (Lloyd 2015): http://project-management.com/understanding-lean-project-management/. As you’ve learned in earlier lessons, that’s exactly what Agile project management does in the world of IT. At the end of each sprint, the customer is in possession of a piece of working software.

Throughout any project, you need to do all you can to get stakeholders to focus on the success of the whole project, and not just their individual parts. One way to do this is to make sure everyone understands what the project value is, and then encourage them to optimize the flow of the project. As the project evolves, the project team should continue to refine its understanding of project value; refine its estimate of required resources; and, if necessary, modify the approved budget or adjust scope so that costs do not exceed the budget.

In product development, it is helpful to think of value as an attribute or feature for which customers will pay a premium. Customers may pay more for smaller size, longer life, better aesthetics, or more durable products. Depending on the use of the product being created, these may be more or less important. Susan Ottmann, program director for Engineering Professional Development at the University of Wisconsin-Madison, points out that “Schneider Electric produces two types of load centers for the U.S. market. (A load center is the box in your home that houses circuit breakers.) The QO brand is differentiated from the Homeline brand by a higher level of durability and quality. Although both perform the same function, the technology inside the breakers is slightly different. Presumably, QO has made the calculation that some customers will be willing to pay more for a higher quality product” (pers. comm., June 6, 2018).

9.2 Keeping an Eye on Scope

A project’s budget, estimate, and cost are all affected by the project’s scope. Anyone who has ever remodeled a bathroom in an old house is familiar with the way scope can change throughout the course of a project. The fact is, you can’t really know how much the project is going to cost until you tear up the floor and get a look at the state of the old plumbing. Boston’s Big Dig—which was estimated to cost $2.8 billion, but ultimately cost $14.6 billion—is a more extreme example of the same principle at work: It is difficult to precisely predict the cost of any endeavor at its outset.

A good rule of thumb is to assume that whatever can go wrong probably will go wrong. For example, to return to the remodeling example—rather than naively hoping for the best, you’d be wise to assume that everything old will have to be replaced when you begin pulling up the floor in a fifty-year-old bathroom. Overly optimistic assumptions about risk and scope are a leading cause of unrealistic estimates. Assuming everything will have to be replaced would help set an estimate for the upper bound of a likely range of costs for the project. Estimates should include a range, which can be narrowed as more is learned about actual project conditions.

Examples of cost and time overruns are easy to find. Here are just a few sources to give you a sense of the magnitude of the problem, which is especially acute in massive megaprojects:

- A report on overruns in the energy industry: http://www.ey.com/Publication/vwLUAssets/EY-spotlight-on-oil-and-gas-megaprojects/$FILE/EY-spotlight-on-oil-and-gas-megaprojects.pdf
- A *Forbes* article describing the vast costs of hosting the Olympic games: http://www.forbes.com/sites/niallmccarthy/2016/08/04/the-massive-cost-of-hosting-the-olympic-games-infographic/#66c9ad79ddf7
- A slide collection from MSN.com documenting budget-busting megaprojects in a variety of industries: www.msn.com/en-us/money/markets/budget-busting-megaprojects-coming-soon-%E2%80%93-or-are-they/ss-BBQ7nf5?li=BBnb7Kz&ocid=UP97DHP

When asked to defend mounting costs, project managers will sometimes argue that the cost increased because the scope evolved, when in fact the real culprit is scope creep. As discussed in Lesson 4, scope evolution, or managed change, is a natural and rational result of the kind of learning that goes on throughout the course of a project. It is a conscious, managed choice caused by externalities that forces you to reconsider project essentials in order to achieve the intended project value.

Scope creep, by contrast, is caused by unmanaged changes to the project scope. It might add value from the customer’s perspective, but the time, money, and resources consumed by the change of scope lead to additional overruns. Scope creep tends to happen when no one is paying attention to the project’s scope.

The key to managing scope changes is a process for early identification, review, and approval of requested changes to project scope. A **Scope Change Request**—or a Project Variation Request (PVR) as it is sometimes called— is a form that must be signed by all affected stakeholders prior to implementation. This article by Tom Mochal provides some helpful guidelines for managing scope changes: http://www.techrepublic.com/article/follow-this-simple-scope-change-management-process/. You can download a sample Scope Change Request form here: www.demo.projectize.com/pmf/templates/63.doc

9.3 Understanding Budgets

Precision versus Accuracy

Can a price be precise but not accurate? Yes. You might calculate a price down to the penny, but if you’re wrong, you’re not accurate. Engineers tend to focus on precision at the expense of accuracy. But accuracy is far more useful. And remember, you can never be more precise than the least precise line item (Nelson 2017).

Budgeting is an exercise in refining your focus. You start with a wide-angle estimate, in which the details are necessarily fuzzy, and bit by bit zero in on a sharper picture of project costs. You might be temperamentally inclined to try to nail down every figure in an early draft of a budget, but in fact you should only develop a budget at the precision needed for current decisions. Your overall precision can and should advance as the project advances.

This is especially important in the earliest stages of the budgeting process, when you are working out rough estimates. Take care to estimate at the appropriate level of precision: Don’t make the mistake of thinking you can estimate costs to the exact penny or dollar. $378,333.27 is not a realistic or intelligent estimate. Ultimately, overly precise budgets represent a communication failure. By proposing a budget to the customer that contains overly precise figures, you risk giving a false sense of accuracy regarding your understanding of and knowledge about the project.

In the early stages of the budgeting process, when you are still working out estimates, it’s helpful to include an uncertainty percentage. A typical approach is to include a +/- percentage, such as $400,000 +/- 10%. The percentage may initially be large but should gradually decrease as the project progresses and the level of uncertainty declines. For IT projects, which are notoriously difficult to estimate, consider going a step further and adding an uncertainty percentage to every line item. Some items, such as hardware, might be easy to estimate. But other items, such as labor to create new technology, can be extremely difficult to estimate. These line item variances can influence the total estimate variance by a significant amount in many projects.

But even when you have a final budget in hand, you need to prepare for uncertainty by including an official contingency fund, which is a percentage of the budget set aside for unforeseen costs. Contingency funds are described in more detail later in this lesson.

Successful project managers use the budgeting process as a way to create stakeholder buy-in regarding the use of available resources to achieve the intended outcome. By being as transparent as possible about costs and resource availability, you’ll help build trust among stakeholders. By taking care to use the right kinds of contracts—for example, contracts that don’t penalize stakeholders

for escalating prices caused by a changing economy—you can create incentives that keep all stakeholders focused on delivering the project value, rather than merely trying to protect their own interests. The relationship between costs and contracts is discussed in more detail later in this lesson.

This blog post by Tim Clark includes some helpful tips on creating a project budget: https://www.liquidplanner.com/blog/7-ways-create-budget-project/.

9.4 Understanding Cost

Ultimately cost, the number management typically cares about most in a for-profit organization, is determined by price. For many projects, it's impossible to know the exact cost of an endeavor until it is completed. Stakeholders can agree on an intended value of a project at the beginning, and that value has an expected cost associated with it. But you may not be able to pin down the cost more precisely until you've done some work on the project and learned more about it.

To estimate and manage costs effectively, you need to understand the different types of costs:

- **direct costs:** "An expense that can be traced directly to (or identified with) a specific cost center or cost object such as a department, process, or product" (Business Dictionary n.d.). Examples of direct costs include labor, materials, and equipment. A direct cost changes proportionately as more work is accomplished.
- **direct project overhead costs:** Costs that are directly tied to specific resources in the organization that are being used in the project. Examples include the cost of lighting, heating, and cleaning the space where the project team works. Overhead does not vary with project work, so it is often considered a fixed cost.
- **general and administrative (G&A) overhead costs:** The "indirect costs of running a business," such as IT support, accounting, and marketing" (Investing Answers n.d.).

The type of contract governing your project can affect your consideration of costs. As explained in Lesson 4, the two main types of contracts are fixed-price and cost-plus. Fixed price is the more predictable of the two with respect to final cost, which can make such contracts appealing to the issuing party. But "this predictability may come with a price. The seller may realize the risk that he is taking by fixing a price and so will charge more than he would for a fluid price, or a price that he could negotiate with the seller on a regular basis to account for the greater risk the seller is taking" (Symes 2018).

Many contracts include both fixed-price and cost-plus features. For example, they might have a fixed price element for those parts of the contract that have low variability and are under the direct control of the project team (e.g., direct labor) but have variable cost elements for those aspects that have a high degree of uncertainty or are outside the direct control of the project team (e.g., fuel costs or market driven consumables).

Contingency Funds

If money is not available from other sources, then cost overruns typically result in a change in the project's scope or a reduction in overall quality. To prevent this, organizations build contingency funds into their budgets. Technically, a **contingency fund** is a financial reserve that is allocated for identified risks that are accepted and for which contingent or mitigating responses are developed. The exact amount of a contingency fund will vary, depending on project risks; a typical contingency fund is 10% to 15% of the total budget but depends on the risks associated with the project.

From the Trenches: John Nelson on Cost Planning and Living Order

John Nelson summarizes his thoughts on cost planning, based on his decades of work on capital projects, as follows:

Conceptual planning takes place in living order. Cost management, when done right, starts out in living order, but moves into a very strict geometric order. Unfortunately, it is rarely done right. Between 2/3 and 3/4 of all projects worldwide end up costing more than originally planned. Getting the costs wrong during the planning stage can result in huge consequences for a project, and possibly for your career. Major cost busts can follow you around for the rest of your working life. If you cost something incorrectly, you'll have to make corresponding downgrades in scope and quality. For example, many college campuses have new buildings with two or three empty floors because the money ran out before they could be finished. You really don't want to be the project manager responsible for a costing error of that magnitude, which is sometimes referred to as a CLM, or career limiting move.

Even worse, companies that get costs wrong and underbid a project sometimes try to salvage a profit by illegal means—perhaps by using cheap materials or cutting corners on safety. On public projects, such as highways or schools, huge costing errors can result in loss of public trust, making it more difficult for the public agency to do more work in the future. In that case, a cost bust can be an OLM—an organizational limiting move.

Accurately and precisely predicting the cost of a project is very difficult. You need to start with humility and curiosity, expending a great deal of effort to get the numbers right, especially when it comes to parts of the project you don't understand. This is true for small projects, like a bathroom renovation in an old house, where you simply don't know what you're going to find until you start opening up the walls. It's also proven true for huge undertakings like the Big Dig, Boston's tunnel megaproject, which ended up with a cost overrun of 190%. (2017)

Contingency funds are often available to pay for an agreed-upon scope change. However, some project managers make a practice of treating a contingency fund as a "Get Out of Jail Free" card that they can use to escape any cost limitations. Some, as a practical matter, will artificially inflate a contingency fund to ensure that they have plenty of resources to draw to manage any unforeseen future risks. But that is never a good idea because if you wind up with a large contingency fund that you ultimately don't spend, you have essentially held that money hostage (i.e., lost opportunity costs) from the rest of the enterprise. That can be as damaging to your organization's mission as a cost overrun that prevents you from finishing a project.

This excellent article, published by the Australian firm Broadleaf Capital International, discusses the issues and tradeoffs involved in contingency funds: http://broadleaf.com.au/resource-material/project-cost-contingency/.

As explained in Lesson 8, contingency funds are a form of risk management. They are a necessary tool for dealing with uncertainty. Unfortunately, as necessary as they are, it's not always possible to build them into your approved budget. For example, if you are competitively bidding on a contract that will be awarded on the lowest cost, then including a contingency fund in your estimate will almost certainly guarantee that your company won't win the contract. It is simply not practical to include a contingency fund in a lump sum contract.

In the living order approach to this problem, the owner maintains a shared contingency fund instead and makes it available, upon justification, for all project stakeholders. This approach helps ensure that project participants will work collaboratively with the project sponsor to solve any problems they might notice, confident that there is money available to address problems that threaten project value or to leverage opportunities that will provide greater project value. For example, in a lecture on Lean and integrated project delivery, David Thomack, a long-time veteran of the construction industry, explained how the Boldt Company and other stakeholders involved in a $2 billion healthcare project protected millions of dollars in contingency funding, which was then ultimately shared among all stakeholders (Thomack 2018). Such shared contingency funds are typically spelled out in the project contract and are an effective tool to manage risk and uncertainty. Although some organizations only manage out-of-pocket project costs, best practice is to manage total cost, including costs associated with staff (engineering, purchasing, testing, etc.) working on the project.

Profit

In private enterprise, cost management is directed toward maximizing profit. A private or publicly-traded organization cannot stay in business unless they are profitable. But that doesn't mean that every project is primarily a profit-maximizing undertaking. Certainly, individual projects (such as developing a new product or completing a design for a client) may have a goal of generating profit. However, some projects (such as deploying an enterprise software system or meeting a regulatory compliance requirement) may not in themselves generate profit, but rather support the broader organization in generating profits. Within governmental and non-profit organizations, projects are not designed to generate profits but might be launched to reduce costs or generate net revenues that can be used to cover other costs within the organization.

As a project manager, you need to understand the financial expectations for your projects. Make sure you know how the financial performance of your project affects the financial performance of the associated project portfolio and the overall organization. This understanding will help you advocate for your proposed project. It will also enable you to better justify changes to the project's scope and budget, based on the project's proposed value.

As a general rule, chasing profits at the expense of both your organization's larger mission and the value your organization wants to offer to customers is not sustainable. A relentless focus on profit alone can wreak havoc on a project as project managers are forced to reduce quality or slow the schedule to meet a carved-in-stone budget that will supposedly ensure profitability. In such situations, however, profitability is nearly always defined in the short-term. A fixation on short-term profits can, paradoxically, lead to spiraling losses in the long term—perhaps because unsatisfied customers take their business elsewhere. Likewise, chasing excessive quality or accelerated schedules can be equally elusive.

Ideally, some kind of financial metric is associated with the success of any project and is spelled out in the contract. A collaborative approach to contracts and procurement helps keep all stakeholders focused on the project's intended value rather than simply on short-term profits.

Cost Estimating

Estimating costs accurately is essential to any organization's success. In fact, in many industries, the knowledge involved in cost estimating is actually a valuable form of intellectual property. The ability to estimate costs is part of a company's overall competitive advantage and a skill required in most industries. There are two basic types of estimating:

- **More on Estimating**

  For clarification on the difference between top-down and bottom-up estimating, see this blog post, by Andy Makar: https://www.liquidplanner.com/blog/how-long-is-that-going-to-take-top-down-vs-bottom-up-strategies/.

  For a complete discussion of cost estimating, see Chapter 5 of *Project Management: The Managerial Process*, by Erik W. Larson and Clifford F. Gray.

  top-down estimates: Estimates that "usually are derived from someone who uses experience and or information to determine the project duration and total cost. However, these estimates are sometimes made by top managers who have very little knowledge of the component activities used to complete the project" (Larson and Gray 2011, 134). A top-down estimator generates an expected total for the entire project and then divides up that total among the various project tasks.

- **bottom-up estimate: "**A detailed cost estimate for a project, computed by estimating the cost of every activity in a work breakdown structure, summing these estimates, and adding appropriate overheads" (Business Dictionary n.d.). A bottom-up estimator divides the project into elements and tasks, estimates a cost for each, and then sums all estimated costs to create a total for the project. A common problem with simple bottom-up estimates is that they often overestimate costs that cannot be justified by market conditions. Total projected costs need to be compared with market realities, and task estimates of planned work and associated costs may have to be adjusted to reach a feasible budget for the overall project. Note that pressure to make such adjustment can encourage the sponsor to try to make the numbers work any way possible, perhaps by overstating the benefits of the project (e.g., higher sales volume than the market forecast predicts) or planning for the project team to do more work faster than is realistic. Ultimately, this is an ethical issue and could end up costing your reputation. It's essential that you remain truthful about the realities of your projects as you estimate their costs.

A third type, **iterative estimating**, combines the best of top-down and bottom-up estimating. Iterative estimating is a process of refining an estimate by taking into account information typically used in a top-down estimate (such as past history of similar projects) and detailed information generated by bottom-up estimating. Iterative estimating takes place in living order and relies on negotiation and coordination among the project stakeholders. It only works if past work is representative of future work, which you can really only determine if you are producing small batches. One type of iterative estimating, **phase estimating**, is "used when the project is large or lengthy or is developing something new or untried for the organization. In phased estimates, the near-term work is estimated with a high level of accuracy, ±5 – 15%, whereas future work is estimated at a high level with ±35% accuracy" (Goodrich n.d.). As the project advances through major phases, the budget for subsequent phases is intentionally reviewed and refined in light of knowledge gained to date.

According to David Pagenkopf, IT project managers use yet another type of estimating called **parametric estimating**, which is a way to "use experience from parts of other projects to come up with estimates for work packages that are similar to past work, but not the same." For example, he explains that "if a ½ ton Ford pick-up gets 20 mpg on the highway then I can estimate that a ½ ton GMC pick-up may get 20 mpg on the highway. That information may be helpful in determining the entire cost of a trip that involves the use of multiple rented trucks. Actual mileage will vary, but without testing the GMC truck and collecting data, I can reasonably estimate mpg for it" (pers. comm. June 1, 2018).

9.5 Target-Value Design

Despite all the effort organizations put into cost management, cost overruns remain a fact of life. For example, in a study of 1,471 IT projects, Flyvbjerg and Budzier found

The Chaos Report

An interesting source of data on the general health of projects is the annual Chaos Report from the Standish Group. Although aimed at the IT industry, it can be extrapolated to other types of projects to show general performance on projects in other industries. The most recent version of the report requires paid access, but you can find earlier versions online for free, such as this copy of the 2014 report: www.projectsmart.co.uk/white-papers/chaos-report.pdf.

The average overrun was 27%—but that figure masks a far more alarming one. Graphing the projects' budget overruns reveals a "fat tail"—a large number of gigantic overages. Fully one in six of the projects we studied…[had] a cost overrun of 200%, on average, and a schedule overrun of almost 70%. This highlights the true pitfall of IT change initiatives: It's not that they're particularly prone to high cost overruns on average, as management consultants and academic studies have previously suggested. It's that an unusually large proportion of them incur massive overages. (2011)

Cost overruns occur for many reasons, including lack of sufficient knowledge about the project, inability to obtain funding for the full scope of the desired work, uncertainty about the feasibility of the project, and conflicting priorities. Using only the traditional, geometric approach to cost management fails to encourage broad on-going stakeholder engagement and collaboration that can prevent these problems. You will get far better results by incorporating the living order principle of **target-value design**, a cornerstone of Lean project delivery in the construction field which has applications in nearly all areas of project management. A **target value** is the output stakeholders want the project to generate. Target-value design focuses on creating the best possible target value for the customer without exceeding the project's target costs. It requires a fundamental shift in thinking from "expected costs" to "target cost." The target-value design process is collaborative and iterative, typically requiring frequent refinement and conversation among project stakeholders.

For a quick, thirty-second introduction to target-value design, see this video:

A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: pb.libretexts.org/web1/?p=88

In the traditional budget process, the estimate is based on a detailed design and project plan. In target-value design, you start with the intended value of the project, and then design and plan a project that will deliver the intended value for the targeted cost. In other words, the project's value and associated budget determines the project's design, and not the other way around. This is nothing new for product development teams, who nearly always have to design their products for particular price points. But the degree of engagement with the customers required in target value design to find out what customers really want is not something most product development teams are used to. In any industry, the goal of target-value design is hitting the sweet spot of what you can get for the right price, schedule, and quality. For example, the whole point of Agile software development is continually refocusing the project in an attempt to achieve the desired target-value.

Thinking About Value

According to John Nelson, you can't get the costs right on a project until you understand what the customer values. To do that, you need to understand what *value* really means:

We make value-based decisions all the time. But different people value different things. For instance, in Wisconsin, you might choose to drive an inexpensive car, so you don't have to worry about it getting damaged on icy winter roads. A realtor, who has to drive clients around in her car, might choose a more comfortable, expensive vehicle. There's no right or wrong in these decisions. You're both right.

Keep in mind that a moral value is different from a project value. Moral values are about right and wrong. Project value is concerned with the worth of something—and the only person who can determine that is the customer. The only time an engineer can object to the customer's definition of project value is when the customer asks for something that is a threat to human safety or is illegal.

When costing a project, you need to figure out what your customer's value threshold is. You don't want to build the best thing ever built if that's not what they want. So, the first step in the target value process is to get the customer to explain her definition of value. To do that, you need to have open conversations in which you keep asking questions, all the while making it clear you are eager to learn what the customer wants. At this stage, it's essential to resist the temptation to over-promise what you can deliver. One way to avoid this is to continually engage with the customer about value, budget, and schedule. (2017)

According to John Nelson, in capital projects, a target value cost model is "a framework of estimates and budgets that changes over time" (2017). The process entails "many conversations about price, cost, budget, and estimate, and at the same time discussions with the customer about what they really value." When done right, it transforms "cost management from a calculation performed in isolation by professional estimators, to a process of ongoing, collaborative learning about the project in which team members and the customers all have a role. It avoids the pitfall of having one person responsible for calculating a total cost, and another person responsible for delivering the project at that number" (2017).

The ultimate goal of target-value design is to reduce the waste and rework that normally arises in the design/estimate/redesign cycle. It necessarily involves cross-functional teams because no one party in isolation has the necessary knowledge to define project value and develop a project plan that most efficiently delivers that value. Target-value design integrates the definition of the project's product/deliverables with the process used to deliver the project and with the associated project costs.

To help you implement target-value design in your organization, the Lean Construction Institute recommends nine "foundational practices." These principles apply to all types of projects:

1. **Engage deeply with the client to establish the target-value**. Both designers and clients share the responsibility for revealing and refining concerns, for making new assessments of what is value, and for selecting how that value is produced. Continue engaging with the client throughout the design process to uncover client concerns.
2. **Lead the design effort for learning and innovation.** Expect the team will learn and produce something surprising. Establish routines to reveal what is learned and innovated in real-time. Also expect surprise will upset the current plan and require more replanning.
3. **Design to a detailed estimate.** Use a mechanism for evaluating design against the budget and the target values of the client. Review how well you are achieving the targets in the midst of design. When budget matters, stick to the budget.
4. **Collaboratively plan and re-plan the project.** Use planning to refine practices of coordinating action. This will avoid delay, rework, and out-of-sequence design.
5. **Concurrently design the product and the process in design sets.** Develop details in small batches (lot size of one) in tandem with the customers (engineer, builders, owner, users, architect) of the design detail. Adopt a practice of accepting (approving) completed work as you design.
6. **Design and detail in the sequence of the customer who will use it.** This maintains attention to what is valued by the customer. Rather than doing what you can do at this time, do what others need you to do next. This leads to a reduction in negative iterations.
7. **Work in small and diverse groups.** Learning and innovation arises socially. The group dynamics of small groups—8 people or less—is more conducive to learning and innovating: trust and care for one another establish faster; and communication and coordination are easier.
8. **Work in a big room.** Co-locating design team members is usually the best option. Design is messy. Impromptu sessions among design team members are a necessary part of the process. So are regular short co-design sessions among various specialists working in pairs.
9. **Conduct retrospectives throughout the process.** Make a habit of finishing each design cycle with a conversation for reflection and learning. Err on the side of having more retrospectives not fewer. Use plus|deltas at the end of meetings. Use more formal retrospectives that include the client at the end of integration events. Instruct all team members to ask for a retrospective at any time even if they just have a hunch that it might uncover an opportunity for improvement. (Macomber and Barberio 2007)

Costs in Practice

John Nelson's work on the Discovery Building at the University of Wisconsin-Madison included an interesting example of the kind of value trade-off that occurs in target value design:

It turned out that the owner expected extremely high-quality lighting in the building, which put pressure on the target value for electrical. To that, we said, "Ok, we can increase the target value for electrical, but we can't increase the project budget. So what system will we offset that with?" In the end, we used a flat slab concrete structure system that allowed us to take four feet out of the height of the building. We also used digital-integrated design, designing the entire building in AutoCAD, working out all the interferences before we went in the field. Taking four feet out of the height of the building allowed the skin price to come down, which offset the cost of the higher quality lighting. This is an example of the kind of give-and-take required to manage costs.

Value is at the heart of target-value design and is ultimately defined by the client. However, as a project manager, it's sometimes your job to expand the client's notion of what constitutes a project's overall value, perhaps by encouraging the client to think about the project's entire life cycle, from planning, to construction/manufacturing/implementation, to operation and support, and to product or facility retirement/ decommissioning.

So, what does target-value design look like in practice? Appendix A in *The Design Manager's Handbook* (which is available online here: http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/9781118486184.app1/pdf) includes some helpful examples (Mossman, Ballard and Pasquire 2013). Figure 9-1, created by The Boldt Company, provides a graphical representation of key milestones in a target-value design project.

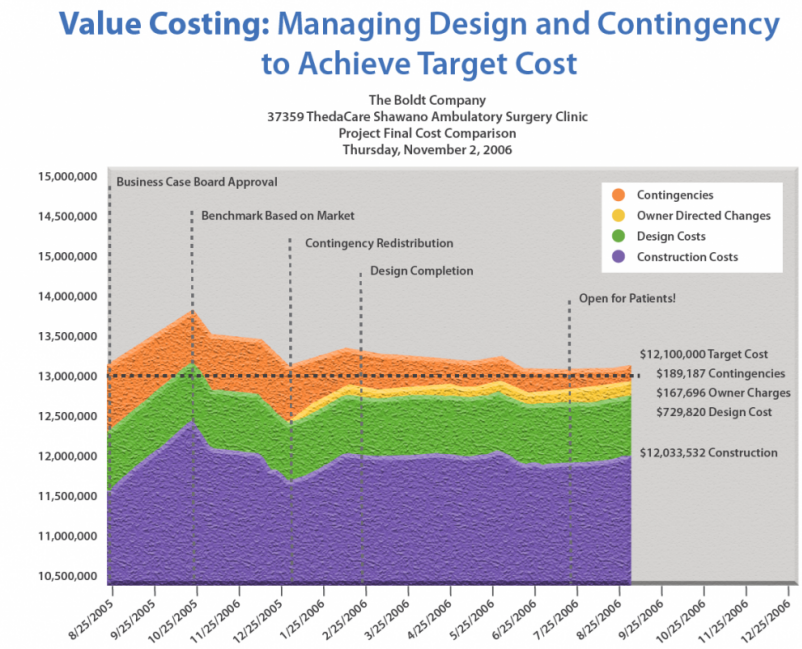


Figure 9-1: Key milestones in a target-value design project (Source: The Boldt Company)

This diagram shows that:

- The target cost was set at $13,100,000 by board approval.
- The initial estimated costs, exclusive of contingencies, were slightly above the target cost.
- The design was modified to enable estimated costs, including contingencies, to approach the target cost.
- The final design included owner-initiated changes that were covered by contingency allowances. As the project advanced, contingency funds were used as needed, although they were reduced as the team managed actual costs to align with estimates, with the goal of keeping total costs within the target budget.
- Unused contingency funds were available at the end to share among project partners.
- Throughout the project, participants took care to check in on the project's scope, cost, and schedule. In any project, it's essential to have some process for defining the project scope, identifying potential scope changes, and identifying the cost and schedule tradeoffs necessary to make those changes possible.

~Practical Tips

- **When it comes to project costs, don't try to be all things for all customers:** Some organizations do better on low-cost projects, others on high-cost projects. Few can do both. If discussions about value during the planning stage tell you that the customer has a Mercedes appetite with a Chevrolet wallet, then you probably don't want to work for that customer because you won't be able to please them.
- **Be prepared to learn:** Throughout a project, you move along on a continuum of living order to geometric order, where things get more predictable as you proceed. But you never know the total cost of a project until it's finished.
- **Engage stakeholders throughout the budgeting process:** It's essential to keep the conversation going with stakeholders as you make trade-offs, so the stakeholders own all the value decisions
- **Don't shrug off a costing mistake by saying *I could only estimate what I knew*:** To the customer, that means *I didn't know enough*. Or worse, *I didn't take the time to learn enough*. Be honest and humble about what you do and do not know about costs at any given point, avoid giving the impression that you know more than you do, and never be more precise than is justified.
- **Avoid the jargon *guaranteed maximum price with qualifications*:** This phrase, which is very common in the construction industry, is an oxymoron. Something can't be both guaranteed and qualified.
- **Cultivate informed intuition:** Developed through experience, informed intuition can be a huge help in estimating. Your informed intuition will improve as you repeat similar projects. In the early stages of your career, seek out mentors who can help speed up your acquisition of informed intuition.
- **Don't make the mistake of waiting to look at costs, budgets, and estimates until you reach a milestone:** At that point it's usually too late. To avoid surprises, check in with the numbers throughout the project. Strive to get the big things right at the beginning, using informed intuition for unknowns. Throughout the project, be prepared to adjust, reset, or stop proactively if a budget bust or estimate overrun seems likely.
- **Remember that production/construction costs are not the end of the story:** You also need to be upfront about the difference between the production/construction costs, and the total cost of ownership. For example, the total cost of ownership for an engine would include maintenance and replacement parts. In capital projects, this includes fees, furniture, and contingency funds, which can add 30% to 40%. In IT, the life-cycle cost includes maintenance, which is typically 20% of the purchase price.
- **Understand the difference between costs in public and private domains:** Sometimes, in the public domain, in a very rigid design-bid-build situation, you are given a number for the amount of money you are able to spend. In that case, you simply have to design the project to meet that number. That's not target valuing. That's reverse engineering to meet a specific cost at a minimum level of quality.
- **Be realistic about your level of uncertainty:** At all times, avoid misleading stakeholders into thinking your current level of accuracy is higher than it actually is. Be honest about the fact that the project team's ability to be accurate will improve over time, as the team gains more information about the project.
- **Learn about the financial environment in which your project will unfold:** Make sure you understand the financial planning methods of your business. In some companies, costs of test facilities are considered overhead and are part of general and administrative fixed costs. In other companies, the same internal costs are charged directly to each individual project on a "per use" basis. This can drastically affect final project cost viability. Understanding how your company allocates costs and what needs to be included in the project budget is essential for good planning. A best practice way to do this is to have your project plans and budgets audited by a project manager experienced in the company processes.
- **Manage contingency funds at a project level:** In the same way that a gas expands to fill the available space, spending expands to match the available budget. For this reason, contingency is best managed at a project level, not a task level.
- **Create a shared contingency fund:** Whenever possible, create a shared contingency fund for the project, so that all stakeholders benefit from staying on budget or are hurt by cost overruns.
- **Remember that, in product development, a lower-than-expected volume can affect profitability:** In product development, the cost of a product at launch is often higher than expected due to lower volumes. This may impact profitability. Make sure your team understands the path to reaching the target cost at the target volume with contingencies if anticipated volumes are not attained. This is especially true in industries with high fixed costs and low manufacturing costs, such as the pharmaceutical industry.
- **Think about possible tradeoffs:** Scope, costs, and schedule will typically change as a project advances. As project circumstances evolve, keep asking yourself, "What trade-offs can my team make that are in the project's best interests?"
- **Be prepared to work with a predefined budget:** A budget negotiation process in which the team is free to discuss the project and make suggestions is ideal, but sometimes an organization's leader creates a budget for a project, and the assigned team is charged with making it work one way or the other. In that case, you will need to assess the feasibility of achieving the project's goals with the assigned budget and either: 1) lead the team in developing an appropriate project strategy and plan; or 2) negotiate with the project sponsor to modify the scope and/or budget to enable your team to confidently commit to delivering the project's value.

~Summary

- Terminology is important in any technical endeavor, but when it comes to a project's overall value, miscommunications resulting from incorrectly used terms can result in misaligned expectations and erode trust among project participants. Make sure you understand the difference between budgets and estimates, and the difference between price and cost. Of all the terms related to budgeting a project, the meaning of "value" can be especially difficult to grasp. The most important thing to remember is that value is determined by the customer and then flows back to all participants, shaping all project activities. Delivering value is your primary job as a project manager.
- A project's budget, estimate, and cost are all affected by the project's scope. When asked to defend mounting costs, project managers will sometimes argue that the cost increased because the scope evolved, when in fact the real culprit is scope creep. The key to managing scope changes is a Scope Change Request—or a Project Variation Request (PVR) as it is sometimes called—which is a form that must be signed by all affected stakeholders prior to implementation.
- Budgeting is an exercise in refining your focus. You start with a wide-angle estimate, in which the details are necessarily fuzzy, and bit by bit zero in on a sharper picture of project costs. Take care to estimate at the appropriate level of precision: Don't make the mistake of thinking you can estimate costs to the exact penny or dollar. Successful project managers use the budgeting process as a way to create stakeholder buy-in regarding the use of available resources to achieve the intended outcome. By being as transparent as possible about costs and resource availability, you'll help build trust among stakeholders.
- To estimate and manage costs effectively, you need to understand the different types of costs, including direct costs, direct project overhead costs, and general and administrative (G&A) overhead costs. The type of contract (for example, fixed-price versus cost-plus) governing your project can affect your consideration of costs. If money is not available from other sources, then cost overruns typically result in a change in the project's scope or a reduction in overall quality. To prevent this, organizations build contingency funds into their budgets. The exact amount of a contingency fund will vary, depending on project risks; a typical contingency fund is 10% to 15% of the total budget but depends on the risks associated with the project. Shared contingency funds can encourage stakeholders to focus on the well-being of the project as a whole rather than their individual stakes in the project.
- As a project manager, you need to understand the financial expectations for your projects. In private enterprise, cost management is directed toward maximizing profit. But that doesn't mean that every project is primarily a profit-maximizing undertaking. Within governmental and non-profit organizations, projects are not designed to generate profits but might be launched to reduce costs or generate net revenues that can be used to cover other costs within the organization. A collaborative approach to contracts and procurement helps keep all stakeholders focused on the project's intended value, rather than simply on short-term profits. Estimating costs accurately is also essential to any organization's success, and you should be familiar with the two basic types of estimates—top-down estimates and bottom-up estimates—as well as iterative estimates, which combine the best features of top-down and bottom-up estimates.
- Target-value design, a cornerstone of Lean project delivery in the construction field, has applications in nearly all areas of project management. Target-value design focuses on creating the best possible value for the customer without exceeding the project's target costs. It requires a fundamental shift in thinking from "expected costs" to "target cost." The target-value design process is collaborative and iterative, typically requiring frequent refinement and conversation among project stakeholders. The ultimate goal of target-value design is to reduce the waste and rework that normally arises in the design/estimate/redesign cycle.

~Glossary

- **bottom-up estimate**—**"**Detailed cost estimate for a project, computed by estimating the cost of every activity in a work breakdown structure, summing these estimates, and adding appropriate overheads" (Business Dictionary n.d.). A bottom-up estimator starts by dividing the project up into tasks, then estimates a cost for each task, and sums the total costs for all the project tasks.
- **budget**—The funds that have been allocated for a project.
- **contingency fund**—A financial reserve that is allocated for identified risks that are accepted and for which contingent or mitigating responses are developed. Contingency funds are also often available to pay for an agreed-upon scope change.
- **cost**—"An expenditure, usually of money, for the purchase of goods or services" (Law 2016). Note that, like all terms, the meaning of "cost" varies somewhat from industry to industry. For example, in product development, the term has three specific meanings: 1) cost to create the product or project; 2) cost to establish a manufacturing cell capable of producing the product; and 3) cost of the final good or service to the market.
- **direct costs**—"An expense that can be traced directly to (or identified with) a specific cost center or cost object such as a department, process, or product" (Business Dictionary n.d.). Examples of direct costs include labor, materials, and equipment. A direct cost changes proportionately as more work is accomplished.
- **direct project overhead costs**— Costs that are directly tied to specific resources in the organization that are being used in the project. Examples include the cost of lighting, heating, and cleaning the space where the project team works. Overhead does not vary with project work, so it is often considered a fixed cost.
- **estimate**—An assessment of the likely budget for a project. An estimate involves counting and costing and is based on ranges and probabilities. Throughout a project, managers and team members are asked to estimate remaining work, cost at completion, and required remaining time. An estimate is a forward projection, using what is known, to identify, as best as possible, the required effort, time, and/or cost for part or all of a project.
- **general and administrative (G&A) overhead costs**—The "indirect costs of running a business, such as IT support, accounting, and marketing" (Investing Answers n.d.).
- **iterative estimating**—A combination of top-down and bottom-up estimating, which involves constant refinement of the original estimate by taking into account information typically used in a top-down estimate (such as past history of similar projects) and increasingly detailed information generated by bottom-up estimating.
- **parametric estimating**—A way to use experience from parts of other projects to come up with estimates for work packages that are similar to past work but not the same.
- **phase estimating**—A type of iterative estimating that is "used when the project is large or lengthy or is developing something new or untried for the organization. In phased estimates, the near-term work is estimated with a high level of accuracy ±5 – 15% whereas future work is estimated at a high level with ±35% accuracy" (Goodrich n.d.). As the project advances through major phases, the budget for subsequent phases is intentionally reviewed and refined in light of knowledge gained to date.
- **price**—**"**A value that will purchase a finite quantity, weight, or other measure of a good or service" (Business Dictionary).
- **Project Variation Request (PVR)**—*See* Scope Change Request.
- **Scope Change Request**—A document that describes a proposed scope change, including its potential benefits and the consequences of not implementing the change. A Scope Change Request must be signed by all affected stakeholders prior to implementing a scope change. Also known as a Project Variation Request (PVR).
- **scope creep**—Changes to a project's scope without any corresponding changes to the schedule or cost. The term is typically applied to changes that were unapproved or lacked sufficient knowledge about the project and potential assessment of risks and costs when they were approved. Simply put, scope creep is unmanaged change.
- **scope evolution**— An alteration to the project scope that occurs as the project participants learn more about the project. Scope evolution results in an official change in the project scope, and therefore to the project budget or schedule, as agreed to by all project participants. In other words, scope evolution is managed change.
- **target value**—The output stakeholders want the project to generate.
- **target-value design**—A design process that focuses on value as defined by the customer, with the project's overall design involving stakeholder engagement and collaboration.
- **top-down estimates**—Estimates that "usually are derived from someone who uses experience and or information to determine the project duration and total cost. However, these estimates are sometimes made by top managers who have very little knowledge of the component activities used to complete the project" (Larson and Gray, 134). A top-down estimator generates a total for the entire project and then divides up that total among the various project tasks.
- **value**—"The inherent worth of a product as judged by the customer and reflected in its selling price and market demand" (Lean Enterprise Institute 2014).

~References

Business Dictionary. n.d. "Direct cost." *Business Dictionary.* Accessed May 2, 2018. http://www.businessdictionary.com/de...rect-cost.html.

—. n.d. "Engineering cost estimate." *Business Dictionary.* Accessed July 15, 2018. http://www.businessdictionary.com/de...-estimate.html.

—. n.d. "Price." *BusinessDictionary.com.* Accessed July 15, 2018. http://www.businessdictionary.com.

Flyvbjerg, Bent, and Alexander Budzier. 2011. "Why Your IT Project May Be Riskier Than You Think." *Harvard Business Review.* https://hbr.org/2011/09/why-your-it-...han-you-think/.

Goodrich, Belinda. n.d. "Budgetary Estimate vs Phased Estimate." *PM Learning Solutions.* Accessed May 1, 2018. https://www.pmlearningsolutions.com/...pmp-concept-20.

Investing Answers. n.d. "General and Administrative Expense (G&A)." *Investing Answers.* Accessed May 1, 2018. http://www.investinganswers.com/fina...xpense-ga-6674.

Larson, Erik W., and Clifford F. Gray. 2011. *Project Management: The Managerial Process, Sixth Edition.* New York: McGraw-Hill Education.

Law, Jonathan, ed. 2016. *A Dictionary of Business and Management.* Oxford: Oxford University Press. https://books.google.com/books?id=w3...page&q&f=false.

Lean Enterprise Institute. 2014. *Lean Lexicon, Fifth Edition.* Edited by Chet Marchwinski. Cambridge, MA: Lean Enterprise Institute.

Lloyd, Gary. 2015. "Understanding Lean Project Management." *Project-Management.com.* May 7. http://project-management.com/unders...ct-management/.

Macomber, Hal, and John Barberio. 2007. "Target-Value Design: Nine Foundational Practices for Delivering Surprising Client Value." *Lean Construction Institute.* http://www.leanconstruction.org/medi...Design-LPC.pdf.

Mossman, Alan, Glenn Ballard, and Christine Pasquire. 2013. "Appendix A: Lean Project Delivery–Innovation in Integrated Design & Delivery." In *Design Manager's Handbook*, by John Eynon, 165-190. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/1...86184.app1/pdf.

Nelson, John. 2017. "Conceptual Planning and Cost Management, Parts 1 and 2." *Lecture for CEE 498, Construction Project Management, University of Wisconsin-Madison.* February 1.

Rosenthal, Mark. 2009. "First: Define Value." *The Lean Thinker.* August 20. http://theleanthinker.com/2009/08/20...-define-value/.

Symes, Steven. 2018. "Advantages & Disadvantages of a Fixed-Price Contract." *Chron.* April 13. http://smallbusiness.chron.com/advan...act-21066.html.

Thomack, David. 2018. "Introduction to Lean and Project Delivery." *Video Lecture for CEE 498: Construction Management.* University of Wisconsin-Madison, College of Engineering, April 20.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Maintenance Employees Rights and Protection- OSHA

5.1: Employees Health and Safety

Learning Objectives

- Discuss human resource management's role in supporting workplace health and safety

Given their responsibility for people, culture, and associated policies and procedures, human resource management plays a critical role in supporting workplace health and safety. The points made in OSHA's Be Safe + Sound Management Leadership Guide are particularly relevant to HR management, and include:

- Making worker safety and health a core organizational value
- Eliminating hazards, protecting workers, and continuously improving workplace safety and health
- Providing sufficient resources to implement and maintain the safety and health program
- Visibly demonstrate and communicate their safety and health commitment to workers and others.

For example, HR management has a responsibility to ensure that the organization is in compliance with OSH Act requirements and that supervisors and managers understand that it is their duty to ensure that the workplace is free from recognized hazards that are causing or likely to cause death or serious physical harm. Management training and evaluation should ensure that managers understand employee rights, including, for example, the right to safety training in a language that the employee understands.

This duty of care also extends to workplace violence, which includes "any act or threat of physical violence, harassment, intimidation, or other threatening disruptive behavior that occurs at the work site"[1] As discussed previously, workplace violence ranges from threats and verbal abuse to homicide. SHRM research indicates that approximately 33% of American employees and almost 20% of HR professionals either don't know are unsure of what to do if they witness or are involved in a workplace violence incident.[2] Research also found that while the majority of HR professionals reported having developed workplace violence training, one third didn't provide training to employees. Additionally, while almost all HR professionals reported having a process for identifying employees with a history of violence, over 50% were unsure of whether they have a workplace violence prevention program. As SHRM-SCP, SHRM president and CEO Johnny C. Taylor, Jr. stated: "Companies and HR should and must do more to make employees feel safe at work," adding that "If you make the investment in security and preparation, your employees will feel safer and respect you for valuing their safety."

? PRactice Question

https://assessments.lumenlearning.co...essments/18228

OSHA Resources

OSHA recognizes that its regulatory and enforcement efforts alone are inadequate to achieve the compliance of over 10 million employers. That's where outreach activities come in. Specifically, OSHA's consulting, training and outreach efforts are designed to shift the safety curve, prompting organizations to adopt Safety and Health Programs that build a culture of and commitment to safety, as illustrated in Figure 1.

Figure 1. Shifting the Safety Curve

To that end, OSHA offers are range of consulting services, training and supporting resources, including the following:

- An OSHA Compliance Quick Start Tool
- On-Site Consultation—Free and confidential occupational safety and health services for small- and medium-sized businesses.
- A broad range of safety and health tools, publications and guides for specific OSHA standards, programs (e.g., SHP) and safety and health topics (e.g., Workplace Violence)
- OSHA's Safe and Sound page—everything you need to develop and implement a safety and health program
- Recognition ("Cooperative") programs
- A range of data and statistics and informational resources, including its QuickTakes bi-weekly e-newsletter

Note that the OSHA website is available in both English and Spanish.

? Practice Question

https://assessments.lumenlearning.co...essments/18229

1. "Workplace Violence." Occupation Safety and Health Administration, United States Department of Labor. Accessed August 20, 2019. ↵
2. "With Workplace Violence on the Rise, 1 out of 7 People Don't Feel Safe at Work." Society for Human Resource Management. March 19, 2019. Accessed August 20, 2019. ↵

Contributors and Attributions

Public domain content

- US-OSHA-Logo. **Provided by**: Wikimedia Commons. **Located at**: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:US-OSHA-Logo.svg. **License**: *Public Domain: No Known Copyright*
- Modification of Shifting the Safety Curve. **Provided by**: OSHA. **Located at**: www.osha.gov/sustainability/docs/OSHA_sustainability_paper.pdf. **License**: *Public Domain: No Known Copyright*

5.2: Employer Requirements

Learning Objectives

- Identify employer requirements under the Occupational Safety & Health Act (OSH Act)

Alberta Department of Public Health Work Safety Poster

An agency of the U.S. Department of Labor, OSHA has the primary responsibility for administering and enforcing the Occupational Safety and Health (OSH) Act, with covers a majority of employers and workers; the primary exceptions are (many) public sector employees and the self-employed. Youth worker safety and health is addressed in the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA). However, all OSHA rules also apply to young workers.

The OSH Act establishes an employer's responsibility to provide a safe workplace. In brief, the act requires employers to "provide a workplace free from serious recognized hazards and comply with standards, rules and regulations issued under the OSH Act."[1] On it's website, OSHA highlights the following supporting actions:

- Examine workplace conditions to make sure they conform to applicable OSHA standards.
- Make sure employees have and use safe tools and equipment and properly maintain this equipment.
- Use color codes, posters, labels or signs to warn employees of potential hazards.
- Establish or update operating procedures and communicate them so that employees follow safety and health requirements.
- Provide safety training in a language and vocabulary workers can understand.
- If hazardous chemicals are present, develop and implement a written hazard communication program and train employees on the hazards they are exposed to and proper precautions. A copy of safety data sheets must be readily available.
- Provide medical examinations and training when required by OSHA standards.
  - For more details on training, refer to the Training Requirements in OSHA Standards publication.
- Post the OSHA poster or the state-plan equivalent in a prominent location in the workplace.
  - OSHA regulations do not require employers to display the poster in a foreign language. However, However, OSHA encourages employers with Spanish-speaking workers to also display the Spanish version of the poster.
- Report all significant work-related injuries, including those requiring hospitalization, amputation, loss of an eye or death.
- Maintain records of work-related injuries and illnesses and provide access as appropriate.
- Provide to the OSHA compliance officer the names of authorized employee representatives who may be asked to accompany the compliance officer during an inspection.
- Do not discriminate or retaliate against employees who exercise their rights under the Act.
- Post OSHA citations at or near the work area involved. Each citation must remain posted until the violation has been corrected, or for three working days, whichever is longer. Post abatement verification documents or tags.
- Correct cited violations by the deadline set in the OSHA citation and submit required abatement verification documentation.

? PRactice Question

https://assessments.lumenlearning.co...essments/18221

1. "OSHA Worker Rights and Protections: Employer Responsibilities." Occupational Safety and Health Administration, United States Department of Labor. Accessed August 20, 2019. ↵

Contributors and Attributions

Public domain content

- Alberta Department of Public Health Work Safety Poster. **Authored by**: Provincial Archives of Alberta. **Provided by**: Flickr. **Located at**: https://www.flickr.com/photos/alberta_archives/26534422976/. **License**: *Public Domain: No Known Copyright*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Safety and Protective Equipment-

6.1: Personal Protective Equipment

First Things First

Job site accidents and injuries as a result of tools and equipment being misused or failing are quite common. Cuts and punctures from sharp objects, contusions from blunt objects or impacts, burns from open flame torches and hot pipes, splashing of chemicals or debris to the eyes, and electrical shock are just a few of the common injuries associated with the building maintenance trade.

As construction and maintenance processes offer the potential for many types of traumatic and life threatening injuries, workers in skilled trades should be aware of the hazards and be prepared to respond in the event of an injury. While many industry tasks are performed by a single person, often isolated from others, it is recommended that industry workers receive First Aid and Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR), and Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 10 or 30 Hour Training for Construction certificates. Training will enable industry trades-persons to better assess workplace hazards and respond to them appropriately, whether an incident involves yourself, a teammate, or others on the job site. In person, hands-on First Aid/CPR training can be found through local health and welfare organizations, educational institutions (credit or non-credit), and medical providers. OSHA in person courses can be found at local educational institutions (credit or non-credit), and in online formats through various educational institutions and commercial providers.

First Aid Kit

Although we all hope that we never need one, a first aid kit should be kept on the service vehicle or on the job site at all times. Be sure your first aid kit has you prepared for the type of injuries connected to your field of work. The size of the first aid kit should reflect the number of employees kit is intended to service. Most commercial first aid kits are rated by the amount of people or employees to be served.

Figure 6.1.1: First Aid Kit by Viole Multerer is licensed under CC BY 4.0

6.2: Eye and Face Protection

Eye & Face Protection

- Dust, dirt, metal or wood chips entering the eye from activities such as chipping, grinding, sawing, hammering, the use of power tools or even strong wind forces.
- Chemical splashes from corrosive substances, hot liquids, solvents or other hazardous solutions.
- Objects swinging into the eye or face, such as tree limbs, chains, tools or ropes.
- Radiant energy from welding, harmful rays from the use of lasers or other radiant light (as well as heat, glare, sparks, splash and flying particles).

Types of Eye Protection

- Ability to protect against specific workplace hazards.
- Should fit properly and be reasonably comfortable to wear.
- Should provide unrestricted vision and movement.
- Should be durable and cleanable.
- Should allow unrestricted functioning of any other required PPE.

Source

http://pressbooks.oer.hawaii.edu/buildingmaint/?p=24

6.3: Hearing Protection

Hearing Protection

Some types of hearing protection include:

- **Single-use Earplugs** – Single-use earplugs are made of waxed cotton, foam, silicone rubber or fiberglass wool. They are self-forming and, when properly inserted, they work as well as most molded earplugs.
- **Molded Earplugs** – Pre-formed or molded earplugs must be individually fitted by a professional and can be disposable or reusable. Reusable plugs should be cleaned after each use.
- **Earmuffs** – Require a perfect seal around the ear. Glasses, facial hair, long hair or facial movements such as chewing may reduce the protective value of earmuffs.

Note: Audio headphones and earbuds are not approved devices for hearing protection.

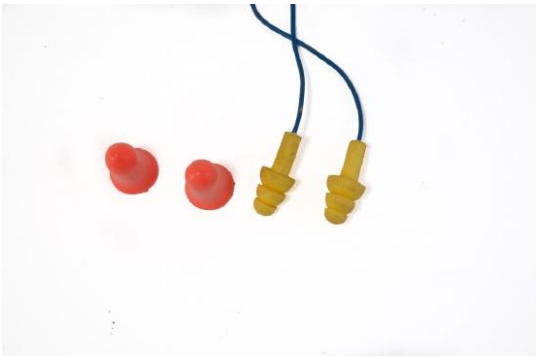


Figure 6.3.1: Hearing Protection by Benjamim Souza is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Determining the need to provide hearing protection for employees can be challenging. Employee exposure to excessive noise depends upon a number of factors, including:

- The loudness of the noise as measured in decibels (dB).
- The duration of each employee's exposure to the noise.
- Whether employees move between work areas with different noise levels.
- Whether noise is generated from one or multiple sources.

Generally, the louder the noise, the shorter the exposure time before hearing protection is required. For instance, employees may be exposed to a noise level of 90 dB for 8 hours per day (unless they experience a Standard Threshold Shift) before hearing protection is required. On the other hand, if the noise level reaches 115 dB hearing protection is required if the anticipated exposure exceeds 15 minutes. Common hearing injuries associated with noise levels in the construction and maintenance industry include both temporary and permanent partial to total hearing loss, and tinnitus (ringing in the ear).

For a more detailed discussion of the requirements for a comprehensive hearing conservation program, see OSHA Publication 3074 (2002), "Hearing Conservation" or refer to the OSHA standard at 29 CFR 1910.95, Occupational Noise Exposure, section (c).

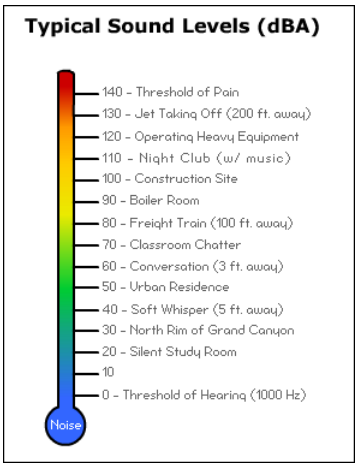


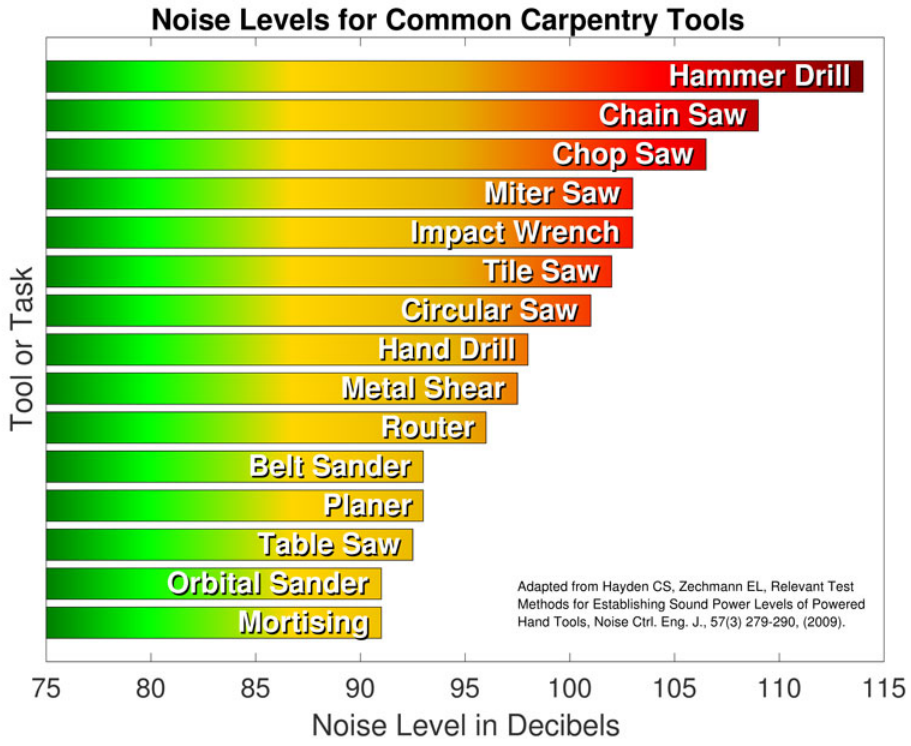
Figure 6.3.2 Typical Sound Level by OSHA is licensed under Public Domain

Table 5, below, shows the permissible noise exposures that require hearing protection for employees exposed to occupational noise at specific decibel levels for specific time periods. Noises are considered continuous if the interval between occurrences of the maximum noise level is one second or less. Noises not meeting this definition are considered impact or impulse noises (loud momentary explosions of sound) and exposures to this type of noise must not exceed 140 dB. Examples of situations or tools that may result in impact or impulse noises are powder-actuated nail guns, a punch press or drop hammers.

Table 6.3.1, below, shows the permissible noise exposures that require hearing protection for employees exposed to occupational noise at specific decibel levels for specific time periods. Noises are considered continuous if the interval between occurrences of the maximum noise level is one second or less. Noises not meeting this definition are considered impact or impulse noises (loud momentary explosions of sound) and exposures to this type of noise must not exceed 140 dB. Examples of situations or tools that may result in impact or impulse noises are powder-actuated nail guns, a punch press or drop hammers.

Duration per day (hrs)	Sound level (dB*)
8	90
6	92
4	95
3	97
2	100
1 1/2	102
1	105
1/2	110
1/4 or less	115

If engineering and work practice controls do not lower employee exposure to workplace noise to acceptable levels, employees must wear appropriate hearing protection. It is important to understand that hearing protectors reduce only the amount of noise that gets through to the ears. The amount of this reduction is referred to as attenuation, which differs according to the type of hearing protection used and how well it fits. Hearing protectors worn by employees must reduce an employee's noise exposure to within the acceptable limits noted in Table 5. Refer to Appendix B of 29 CFR 1910.95, Occupational Noise Exposure, for detailed information on methods to estimate the attenuation effectiveness of hearing protectors based on the device's noise reduction rating (NRR). Manufacturers of hearing protection devices must display the device's NRR on the product packaging. If employees are exposed to occupational noise at or above 85 dB averaged over an eight-hour period, the employer is required to institute a hearing conservation program that includes regular testing of employees' hearing by qualified professionals. Refer to 29 CFR 1910.95(c) for a description of the requirements for a hearing conservation program.



Hearing Protection Self-Check

6.4: Head Protection

Protecting employees from potential head injuries is a key element of any safety program. A head injury can impair an employee for life or it can be fatal. Wearing a safety helmet or hard hat is one of the easiest ways to protect an employee's head from injury. Hard hats can protect employees from impact and penetration hazards as well as from electrical shock and burn hazards.

Employers must ensure that their employees wear head protection if any of the following apply:

- Objects might fall from above and strike them on the head;
- They might bump their heads against fixed objects, such as exposed pipes or beams; or
- There is a possibility of accidental head contact with electrical hazards.

Some examples of occupations in which employees should be required to wear head protection include construction workers, carpenters, electricians, linemen, plumbers and pipefitters, timber and log cutters, welders, among many others. Whenever there is a danger of objects falling from above, such as working below others who are using tools or working under a conveyor belt, head protection must be worn. Hard hats must be worn with the bill forward to protect employees properly.

In general, protective helmets or hard hats should do the following:

- Resist penetration by objects.
- Absorb the shock of a blow.
- Be water-resistant and slow burning.
- Have clear instructions explaining proper adjustment and replacement of the suspension and headband.

Hard hats must have a hard outer shell and a shock-absorbing lining that incorporates a headband and straps that suspend the shell from 1 to 1 1/4 inches (2.54 cm to 3.18 cm) away from the head. This type of design provides shock absorption during anti-impact and ventilation during normal wear.

Protective headgear must meet ANSI Standard Z89.1-1986 (Protective Headgear for Industrial Workers) or provide an equivalent level of protection. Helmets purchased before July 5, 1994 must comply with the earlier ANSI Standard (Z89.1-1969) or provide equivalent protection.

Bump Hats vs. Hard Hats

There are two common classes of protective headgear known as "bump hats" and "hard hats". Bump Hats are designed for use in areas with low head clearance and are recommended for areas where protection is needed from head bumps and lacerations. When the risk of falling or flying objects are present then an ANSI approved Hard Hat is required instead.

Figure 6.4.1: Hard Hat by Rita Wheeler is licensed under CC BY 4.0

There are many types of hard hats available in the marketplace today and it is essential to check the type of hard hat employees are using. Each hat should bear a label inside the shell that lists the manufacturer, the ANSI designation and the class of the hat. This information should be compared against working conditions to ensure proper protection against potential workplace hazards with a requirement for employees to wear the hard hat at all times. It is important for employers to understand all potential hazards when making this selection, including electrical hazards. This can be done through a comprehensive hazard analysis and an awareness of the different types of protective headgear available.

Hard hats are divided into three industrial classes:

- Class A hard hats provide impact and penetration resistance along with limited voltage protection (up to 2,200 volts).
- Class B hard hats provide the highest level of protection against electrical hazards, with high-voltage shock and burn protection (up to 20,000 volts). They also provide protection from impact and penetration hazards by flying/falling objects.
- Class C hard hats provide lightweight comfort and impact protection but offer no protection from electrical hazards.

Size and Care Considerations

Head protection that is either too large or too small is inappropriate for use, even if it meets all other requirements. Protective headgear must fit appropriately on the body and for the head size of each individual. Most protective headgear comes in a variety of sizes with adjustable headbands to ensure a proper fit (many adjust in 1/8-inch increments). A proper fit should allow sufficient clearance between the shell and the suspension system for ventilation and distribution of an impact. The hat should not bind, slip, fall off or irritate the skin.

Some protective headgear allows for the use of various accessories to help employees deal with changing environmental conditions, such as slots for earmuffs, safety glasses, face shields and mounted lights. Optional brims may provide additional protection from the sun and some hats have channels that guide rainwater away from the face. Protective headgear accessories must not compromise the safety elements of the equipment.

Periodic cleaning and inspection will extend the useful life of protective headgear. A daily inspection of the hard hat shell, suspension system and other accessories for holes, cracks, tears or other damage that might compromise the protective value of the hat is essential. Paints, paint thinners and some cleaning agents can weaken the shells of hard hats and may eliminate electrical resistance. Consult the helmet manufacturer for information on the effects of paint and cleaning materials on their hard hats. Never drill holes, paint or apply labels to protective headgear as this may reduce the integrity of the protection. Do not store protective headgear in direct sunlight, such as on the rear window shelf of a car, since sunlight and extreme heat can damage them.

Hard hats with any of the following defects should be removed from service and replaced:

- Perforation, cracking, or deformity of the brim or shell;
- Indication of exposure of the brim or shell to heat, chemicals or ultraviolet light and other radiation (in addition to a loss of surface gloss, such signs include chalking or flaking).

Always replace a hard hat if it sustains an impact, even if damage is not noticeable. Suspension systems are offered as replacement parts and should be replaced when damaged or when excessive wear is noticed. It is not necessary to replace the entire hard hat when deterioration or tears of the suspension systems are noticed.

6.5: Hand Protection

If a workplace hazard assessment reveals that employees face potential injury to hands and arms that cannot be eliminated through engineering and work practice controls, employers must ensure that employees wear appropriate protection. Potential hazards include skin absorption of harmful substances, chemical or thermal burns, electrical dangers, bruises, abrasions, cuts, punctures, fractures and amputations. Protective equipment includes gloves, finger guards and arm coverings or elbow-length gloves.

Employers should explore all possible engineering and work practice controls to eliminate hazards and use PPE to provide additional protection against hazards that cannot be completely eliminated through other means. For example, machine guards may eliminate a hazard. Installing a barrier to prevent employees from placing their hands at the point of contact between a table saw blade and the item being cut is another method.

Types of Protective Gloves

- Palm
- Mechanic's
- Latex
- Vinyl
- Nitrile
- Chemical

There are many types of gloves available today to protect against a wide variety of hazards. The nature of the hazard and the operation involved will affect the selection of gloves. The variety of potential occupational hand injuries makes selecting the right pair of gloves challenging. It is essential that employees use gloves specifically designed for the hazards and tasks found in their workplace because gloves designed for one function may not protect against a different function even though they may appear to be an appropriate protective device.

The following are examples of some factors that may influence the selection of protective gloves for a workplace.

- Type of chemicals handled.
- Nature of contact (total immersion, splash, etc.).
- Duration of contact.
- Area requiring protection (hand only, forearm, arm).
- Grip requirements (dry, wet, oily).
- Thermal protection.
- Size and comfort.
- Abrasion/resistance requirements.

Gloves made from a wide variety of materials are designed for many types of workplace hazards. In general, gloves fall into four groups:

- Gloves made of leather, canvas or metal mesh;
- Fabric and coated fabric gloves;
- Chemical- and liquid-resistant gloves;
- Insulating rubber gloves (See 29 CFR 1910.137 and the following section on electrical protective equipment for detailed requirements on the selection, use and care of insulating rubber gloves).

Glove Selection

The following table from the U.S. Department of Energy (Occupational Safety and Health Technical Reference Manual) rates various gloves as being protective against specific chemicals and will help you select the most appropriate gloves to protect your employees. The ratings are abbreviated as follows: VG: Very Good; G: Good; F: Fair; P: Poor (not recommended). Chemicals marked with an asterisk (*) are for limited service.

Table 6.5.1 The following table from the U.S. Department of Energy (Occupational Safety and Health Technical Reference Manual) rates various gloves as being protective against specific chemicals and will help you select the most appropriate gloves to protect your employees. The ratings

are abbreviated as follows: VG: Very Good; G: Good; F: Fair; P: Poor (not recommended). Chemicals marked with an asterisk (*) are for limited service.

Chemical	Neoprene	Latex/Rubber	Butyl	Nitrile
Acetaldehyde*	VG	G	VG	G
Acetic acid	VG	VG	VG	VG
Acetone*	G	VG	VG	P
Ammonium hydroxide	VG	VG	VG	VG
Amy acetate*	F	P	F	P
Aniline	G	F	F	P
Benzaldehyde*	F	F	G	G
Benzene*	P	P	P	F
Butyl acetate	G	F	F	P
Butyl alcohol	VG	VG	VG	VG
Carbon disulfide	F	F	F	F
Carbon tetrachloride*	F	P	P	G
Castor oil	F	P	F	VG
Chlorobenzene*	F	P	F	P
Chloroform*	G	P	P	F
Chloronaphthalene	F	P	F	F
Chromic acid (50%)	F	P	F	F
Citric acid (10%)	VG	VG	VG	VG
Cyclohexanol	G	F	G	VG
Dibutyl phthalate*	G	P	G	G
Diesel fuel	G	P	P	VG
Diisobutyl ketone	P	F	G	P
Dimethylformamide	F	F	G	G
Dioctyl phthalate	G	P	F	VG
Dioxane	VG	G	G	G
Epoxy resins, dry	VG	VG	VG	VG
Ethyl acetate*	G	F	G	F
Ethyl alcohol	VG	VG	VG	VG
Ethyl ether*	VG	G	VG	G
Ethylene dichloride*	F	P	F	P
Ethylene glycol	VG	VG	VG	VG
Formaldehyde	VG	VG	VG	VG
Formic acid	VG	VG	VG	VG

Chemical	Neoprene	Latex/Rubber	Butyl	Nitrile
Freon 11	G	P	F	G
Freon 12	G	P	F	G
Freon 21	G	P	F	G
Freon 22	G	P	F	G
Furfural*	G	G	G	G
Gasoline, leaded	G	P	F	VG
Gasoline, unleaded	G	P	F	VG
Glycerin	VG	VG	VG	VG
Hexane	F	P	P	G
Hydrazine (65%)	F	G	G	G
Hydrochloric acid	VG	G	G	G
Hydrofluoric acid (48%)	VG	G	G	G
Hydrogen peroxide (30%)	G	G	G	G
Hydroquinone	G	G	G	F
Isooctane	F	P	P	VG
Kerosene	VG	F	F	VG
Ketones	G	VG	VG	P
Lacquer thinners	G	F	F	P
Lactic acid (85%)	VG	VG	VG	VG
Lauric acid (36%)	VG	F	VG	VG
Lineolic acid	VG	P	F	G
Linseed oil	VG	P	F	VG
Maleic acid	VG	VG	VG	VG
Methyl alcohol	VG	VG	VG	VG
Methylamine	F	F	G	G
Methyl bromide	G	F	G	F
Methyl chloride*	P	P	P	P
Methyl ethyl ketone*	G	G	VG	P
Methyl isobutyl ketone*	F	F	VG	P
Methyl metharcrylate	G	G	VG	F
Monoethanolamine	VG	G	VG	VG
Morpholine	VG	VG	VG	G
Naphthalene	G	F	F	G
Napthas, aliphatic	VG	F	F	VG

Chemical	Neoprene	Latex/Rubber	Butyl	Nitrile
Napthas, aromatic	G	P	P	G
Nitric acid*	G	F	F	F
Nitric acid, red and white fuming	P	P	P	P
Nitromethane (95.5%)*	F	P	F	F
Nitropropane (95.5%)	F	P	F	F
Octyl alcohol	VG	VG	VG	VG
Oleic acid	VG	F	G	VG
Oxalic acid	VG	VG	VG	VG
Palmitic acid	VG	VG	VG	VG
Perchloric acid (60%)	VG	F	G	G
Perchloroethylene	F	P	P	G
Petroleum distillates (naphtha)	G	P	P	VG
Phenol	VG	F	G	F
Phosphoric acid	VG	G	VG	VG
Potassium hydroxide	VG	VG	VG	VG
Propyl acetate	G	F	G	F
Propyl alcohol	VG	VG	VG	VG
Propyl alcohol (iso)	VG	VG	VG	VG
Sodium hydroxide	VG	VG	VG	VG
Styrene	P	P	P	F
Styrene (100%)	P	P	P	F
Sulfuric acid	G	G	G	G
Tannic acid (65)	VG	VG	VG	VG
Tetrahydrofuran	P	F	F	F
Toluene*	F	P	P	F
Toluene diisocyanate (TDI)	F	G	G	F
Trichloroethylene*	F	F	P	G
Triethanolamine (85%)	VG	G	G	VG
Tung oil	VG	P	F	VG
Turpentine	G	F	F	VG
Xylene*	P	P	P	F

Care of Protective Gloves

Protective gloves should be inspected before each use to ensure that they are not torn, punctured or made ineffective in any way. A visual inspection will help detect cuts or tears but a more thorough inspection by filling the gloves with water and tightly rolling the cuff towards the fingers will help reveal any pinhole leaks. Gloves that are discolored or stiff may also indicate deficiencies caused by excessive use or degradation from chemical exposure.

Any gloves with impaired protective ability should be discarded and replaced. Reuse of chemical-resistant gloves should be evaluated carefully, taking into consideration the absorptive qualities of the gloves. A decision to reuse chemically-exposed gloves should take into consideration the toxicity of the chemicals involved and factors such as duration of exposure, storage and temperature.

6.6: Respiratory Protection

The information in this section will provide basic information to workers and employers who may find themselves using respiratory protection for the first time. The guidance provides information on what respirators are, how they work, and what is needed for a respirator to provide protection. For additional information see OSHA Bulletin: General Respiratory Protection Guidance for Employers and Workers

What is a respirator?

A respirator is a device that protects you from inhaling dangerous substances, such as chemicals and infectious particles. Respirators are among the most important pieces of protective equipment for working in hazardous environments. Selecting the right respirator requires an assessment of all the workplace operations, processes or environments that may create a respiratory hazard. The identity of the hazard and its airborne concentrations need to be determined before choosing a respirator. This assessment should be done by experienced safety personnel or by an industrial hygienist. There are several different types of respirators, as described below.

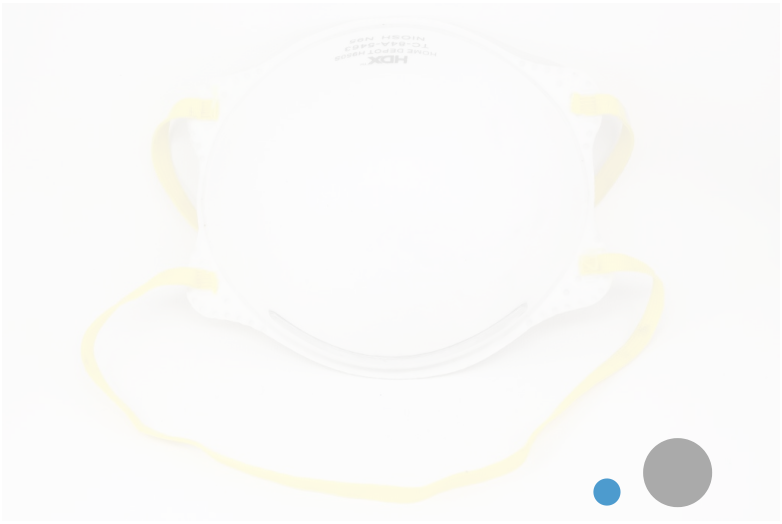


Figure 6.6.1: Dust Mask by Rita Wheeler is licensed under CC BY 4.0.

How do respirators work?

Respirators work by either filtering particles from the air, chemically cleaning (purifying) the air, or supplying clean air from an outside source.

Particulate Respirators

Particulate respirators are the simplest, least expensive, and least protective of the respirator types available. These respirators only protect against particles (e.g., dust). They do not protect against chemicals, gases, or vapors, and are intended only for low hazard levels. The commonly known “N-95” filtering facepiece respirator or “dust mask” is one type of particulate respirator, often used in hospitals to protect against infectious agents. Particulate respirators are “airpurifying respirators” because they clean particles out of the air as you breathe.

Particulate respirators:

- Filter out dusts, fumes and mists.
- Are usually disposable dust masks or respirators with disposable filters.
- Must be replaced when they become discolored, damaged, or clogged.

Examples: filtering facepiece or elastomeric respirator.

Chemical Cartridge/Gas Mask Respirator

Gas masks are also known as “air-purifying respirators” because they filter or clean chemical gases out of the air as you breathe. This respirator includes a facepiece or mask, and a cartridge or canister. Straps secure the facepiece to the head. The cartridge may also have a filter to remove particles.

Gas masks are effective only if used with the correct replaceable cartridge or filter (these terms are often used interchangeably) for a particular biological or chemical substance. Selecting the proper filter can be a complicated process, but is aided through color-coding based on the substance being filtered. There are cartridges available that protect against more than one hazard, but there is no “all-in-one” cartridge that protects against all substances. You may even require more than one cartridge to protect against multiple hazards. It is important to know what hazards you will face in order to be certain you are choosing the right filters/cartridges.

There are nine classes of particulate filters which are broken down into three series: N, R, and P. Each series (N, R, and P) is available at three efficiency levels: 95%, 99%, and 99.97%. The N series filter is used in environments free of oil mists. The R series filters can be exposed to oil mists, but should only be worn for one work shift. The P filter can be exposed to oil mists for longer than one work shift.

Table 6.6.1: Color Blocks by Jonathan Kevan is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Contaminant	Color	Description
Acid gases		White
Hydrocyanic acid gas		White with 1/2 inch green stripe completely around the canister near the bottom
Chlorine gas		White with 1/2 inch yellow stripe completely around the canister near the bottom
Organic Vapors		Black
Ammonia gas		Green
Acid gases and ammonia gas		Green with 1/2 inch white stripe completely around the canister near the bottom
Carbon monoxide		Blue
Acid gases & organic vapors		Yellow
Hydrocyanic acid gas and chloropicrin vapor		Yellow with 1/2 inch blue stripe completely around the canister near the bottom
Acid gases, organic vapors, and ammonia gases		Brown

Contaminant	Color	Description
Radioactive materials, except tritium & noble gases		Magenta
Pesticides		Organic vapor canister plus a particulate filter
Multi-Contaminant and CBRN agent		Olive
Any particulates - P100		Purple
Any particulates - P95, P99, R95, R99, R100		Orange
Any particulates free of oil - N95, N99, or N100		Teal

Powered Air-Purifying Respirator (PAPR)

Powered air-purifying respirators use a fan to draw air through a filter to the user. They are easier to breathe through; however, they need a fully charged battery to work properly. They use the same type of filters/cartridges as other air-purifying respirators. It is important to know what the hazard is, and how much of it is in the air, in order to select the proper filters/cartridges.

Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus

Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus (SCBA) is the respirator commonly used by firefighters. These use their own air tank to supply clean air, so you don't need to worry about filters. They also protect against higher concentrations of dangerous chemicals. However, they are very heavy (30 pounds or more), and require very special training on how to use and to maintain them. Also, the air tanks typically last an hour or less depending upon their rating and your breathing rate (how hard you are breathing).

Provide clean air from a portable air tank when the air around you is simply too dangerous to breathe.

All of these respirators (except for the "dust masks" or filtering face pieces) are available in either half-mask or full-face pieces.

Frequently Asked Questions (Respirators)

Respirator Considerations:

Questions to consider regarding any respirator you are considering purchasing:

- What protection (which chemicals and particles, and at what levels) does the respirator provide?
- Is there more than one size?
- Which size should I use?
- How do I know if the gas mask or respirator will fit?
- What type of training do I need?
- Are there any special maintenance or storage conditions?
- Will I be able to talk while wearing the respirator?

- Does the hood restrict vision or head movement in any way?
- Can I carry the device in the trunk of my automobile?
- Is a training respirator available?

Additional Information

For more information on OSHA's rules and requirements related to respiratory protection, visit OSHA's website at www.osha.gov/SLTC/respiratoryprotection/index.html.

This is one in a series of informational fact sheets highlighting OSHA programs, policies or standards. It does not impose any new compliance requirements. For a comprehensive list of compliance requirements of OSHA standards or regulation, refer to Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations. This information will be made available to sensory-impaired individuals upon request. The voice phone is (202) 693-1999; teletypewriter (TTY) number: (877) 889-5627.

For more complete information:

OSHA
Occupational Safety and Health Administration
U.S. Department of Labor
www.osha.gov
(800) 321-OSHA

6.7: Foot Protection

Footwear

Employees who face possible foot or leg injuries from falling or rolling objects or from crushing or penetrating materials should wear protective footwear. Also, employees whose work involves exposure to hot substances or corrosive or poisonous materials must have protective gear to cover exposed body parts, including legs and feet. If an employee's feet may be exposed to electrical hazards, non-conductive footwear should be worn. On the other hand, workplace exposure to static electricity may necessitate the use of conductive footwear.

Examples of situations in which an employee should wear foot and/or leg protection include:

- When heavy objects such as barrels or tools might roll onto or fall on the employee's feet;
- Working with sharp objects such as nails or spikes that could pierce the soles or uppers of ordinary shoes;
- Exposure to molten metal that might splash on feet or legs;
- Working on or around hot, wet or slippery surfaces; and
- Working when electrical hazards are present.

Safety footwear must meet ANSI minimum compression and impact performance standards in ANSI Z41-1991 (American National Standard for Personal Protection-Protective Footwear) or provide equivalent protection. Footwear purchased before July 5, 1994, must meet or provide equivalent protection to the earlier ANSI Standard (ANSI Z41.1-1967). All ANSI approved footwear has a protective toe and offers impact and compression protection. But the type and amount of protection is not always the same. Different footwear protects in different ways. Check the product's labeling or consult the manufacturer to make sure the footwear will protect the user from the hazards they face.

Foot and leg protection choices include the following:

- Leggings protect the lower legs and feet from heat hazards such as molten metal or welding sparks. Safety snaps allow leggings to be removed quickly.
- Metatarsal guards protect the instep area from impact and compression. Made of aluminum, steel, fiber or plastic, these guards may be strapped to the outside of shoes.
- Toe guards fit over the toes of regular shoes to protect the toes from impact and compression hazards. They may be made of steel, aluminum or plastic.
- Combination foot and shin guards protect the lower legs and feet, and may be used in combination with toe guards when greater protection is needed.
- Safety shoes have impact-resistant toes and heat-resistant soles that protect the feet against hot work surfaces common in roofing, paving and hot metal industries. The metal insoles of some safety shoes protect against puncture wounds. Safety shoes may also be designed to be electrically conductive to prevent the buildup of static electricity in areas with the potential for explosive atmospheres or nonconductive to protect employees from workplace electrical hazards.

Special Purpose Shoes

Electrically conductive shoes provide protection against the buildup of static electricity. Employees working in explosive and hazardous locations such as explosives manufacturing facilities or grain elevators must wear conductive shoes to reduce the risk of static electricity buildup on the body that could produce a spark and cause an explosion or fire. Foot powder should not be used in conjunction with protective conductive footwear because it provides insulation, reducing the conductive ability of the shoes. Silk, wool and nylon socks can produce static electricity and should not be worn with conductive footwear. Conductive shoes must be removed when the task requiring their use is completed.

> **Note**
>
> Employees exposed to electrical hazards must never wear conductive shoes.

Electrical hazard, safety-toe shoes are nonconductive and will prevent the wearers' feet from completing an electrical circuit to the ground. These shoes can protect against open circuits of up to 600 volts in dry conditions and should be used in conjunction with other insulating equipment and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an employee becoming a path for hazardous electrical

energy. The insulating protection of electrical hazard, safety-toe shoes may be compromised if the shoes become wet, the soles are worn through, metal particles become embedded in the sole or heel, or employees touch conductive, grounded items.

> **Note**
>
> Nonconductive footwear must not be used in explosive or hazardous locations.

Care of Protective Footwear

As with all protective equipment, safety footwear should be inspected prior to each use. Shoes and leggings should be checked for wear and tear at reasonable intervals. This includes looking for cracks or holes, separation of materials, broken buckles or laces. The soles of shoes should be checked for pieces of metal or other embedded items that could present electrical or tripping hazards. Employees should follow the manufacturers' recommendations for cleaning and maintenance of protective footwear.

6.8: Tool and Shop Safety

Tools are such a common part of our lives that it is difficult to remember that they may pose hazards. Tragically, a serious incident can occur before steps are taken to identify and avoid or eliminate tool-related hazards.

Five basic safety rules can help prevent hazards associated with the use of hand and power tools:

- Keep all tools in good condition with regular maintenance.
- Use the right tool for the job.
- Examine each tool for damage before use and do not use damaged tools.
- Operate tools according to the manufacturers' instructions.
- Provide and properlyuse appropriate personal protective equipment.

Hand Tool Safety

Hand tools are tools that are powered manually and include anything from axes to wrenches. The greatest hazards posed by hand tools result from misuse and improper maintenance.

Some examples include the following:

- If a chisel is used as a screwdriver, the tip of the chisel may break and fly off, hitting the user or other employees.
- If a wooden handle on a tool, such as a hammer or an axe, is loose, splintered, or cracked, the head of the tool may fly off and strike the user or other employees.
- If the jaws of a wrench are sprung, the wrench might slip.
- If impact tools such as chisels, wedges, or drift pins have mushroomed heads, the heads might shatter on impact, sending sharp fragments flying toward the user or other employees.

Guidance on hand tool use:

- Wear safety glasses when striking objects with tools or the potential for breakage, chips, dust or any other hazard exists.
- Tap fasteners such as nails to start.
- Remove free hand to avoid impact to hand and fingers before striking fastener with force.
- Do not cut towards yourself with sharp tools.
- Avoid storing sharp tools with sensitive tools and equipment.
- Be cautious of wrenches and tools slipping from fasteners to avoid hand injuries and loss of balance.
- Use insulated tools when working with energized circuits.
- Do not operate power tools with cut or frayed power cords, or inoperable or missing safety guards or devices.
- Never carry sharp tools in your pockets.

Power Tool Safety

Employees using electric tools must be aware of several dangers. Among the most serious hazards are electrical burns and shocks.

Electrical shocks, which can lead to injuries such as heart failure and burns, are among the major hazards associated with electric-powered tools. Under certain conditions, even a small amount of electric current can result in fibrillation of the heart and death. An electric shock also can cause the user to fall off a ladder or other elevated work surface and be injured due to the fall.

To protect the user from shock and burns, electric tools must have a three-wire cord with a ground and be plugged into a grounded receptacle, be double insulated, or be powered by a low-voltage isolation transformer. Three-wire cords contain two current-carrying conductors and a grounding conductor. Any time an adapter is used to accommodate a two-hole receptacle, the adapter wire must be attached to a known ground. The third prong must never be removed from the plug.

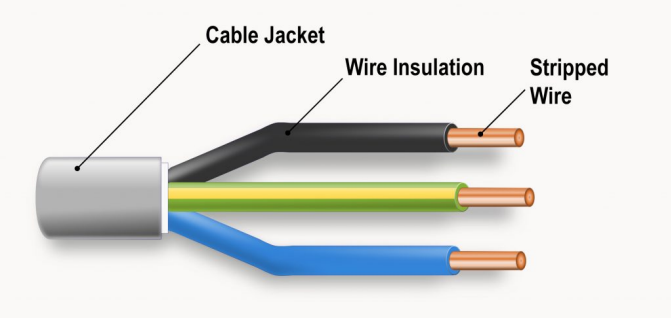


Figure 6.8.1: Electrical cable diagram by Marekich is licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0

Double-insulated tools are available that provide protection against electrical shock without third-wire grounding. On double-insulated tools, an internal layer of protective insulation completely isolates the external housing of the tool.

The following general practices should be followed when using electric tools:

- Wear appropriate eye and hearing protection.
- Read manual and operate electric tools within their design limitations.
- Ensure tool is in the off position prior to connecting to outlet.
- Use gloves and appropriate safety footwear when using electric tools.
- Always use a GFCI protected device for outside and damp location power tool use.
- Do not use electric tools in damp or wet locations unless they are approved for that purpose.
- Do not use portable power tools which have cords that are cut, frayed, or separated from the tool housing. Such cords should be repaired before continued use.
- Keep work areas well lighted when operating electric tools.
- Ensure that cords from electric tools do not present a tripping hazard.
- Never place power cords over shoulders or around neck.
- Secure long hair and loose clothing prior to power tool use.
- Allow the tool to do the work. Never force or apply excessive pressure to the tool.
- Maintain sure footing and well balanced stance.

Additional practices for storage, transportation and maintenance:

- Unplug or remove batteries from power tools before changing accessories.
- Keep tools and equipment well maintained, i.e. blades sharp, cords well maintained, guards in good working order, etc. Store electric tools in a dry place when not in use.
- Do not carry tools by the power cord.
- Make sure that long extension cords are sufficiently large in size to carry the current (amps) necessary for the tools being used. Sufficiently large wire size in cords will help avoid large voltage drop and tool burn-out.

Content augmented with material by: https://www.osha.gov/Publications/osha3080.html

Refer to *Tool Choices and Application* for safety related to specific hand and power tools.

6.9: Ladder Safety and Fall Protection

Ladder Safety

Figure *[Math Processing Error]*: Ladder Safe Step by Viole Multerer is licensed under CC BY 4.0.

Falls from portable ladders (step, straight, combination and extension) are one of the leading causes of occupational fatalities and injuries. According to the Department of Labor's (DOL) Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) ladder safety guidelines, following these safety rules can keep you from becoming a statistic:

- Read and follow all labels/markings on the ladder.
- Avoid electrical hazards! – Look for overhead power lines before handling a ladder. Avoid using a metal ladder near power lines or exposed energized electrical equipment.
- Always inspect the ladder prior to using it. If the ladder is damaged, it must be removed from service and tagged until repaired or discarded.
- Always maintain a 3-point (two hands and a foot, or two feet and a hand) contact on the ladder when climbing. Keep your body near the middle of the step and always face the ladder while climbing (see diagram below).
- Only use ladders and appropriate accessories (ladder levelers, jacks or hooks) for their designed purposes.
- Ladders must be free of any slippery material on the rungs, steps or feet.
- Do not use a self-supporting ladder (e.g., step ladder) as a single ladder or in a partially closed position.
- Do not use the top step/rung of a ladder as a step/rung unless it was designed for that purpose.
- Use a ladder only on a stable and level surface, unless it has been secured (top or bottom) to prevent displacement.
- Do not place a ladder on boxes, barrels or other unstable bases to obtain additional height.
- Do not move or shift a ladder while a person or equipment is on the ladder.
- An extension or straight ladder used to access an elevated surface must extend at least 3 feet above the point of support (see diagram below). Do not stand on the three top rungs of a straight, single or extension ladder.
- The proper angle for setting up a ladder is to place its base a quarter of the working length of the ladder from the wall or other vertical surface (see diagram below).

- A ladder placed in any location where it can be displaced by other work activities must be secured to prevent displacement or a barricade must be erected to keep traffic away from the ladder.
- Be sure that all locks on an extension ladder are properly engaged.
- Do not exceed the maximum load rating of a ladder. Be aware of the ladder's load rating and of the weight it is supporting, including the weight of any tools or equipment.

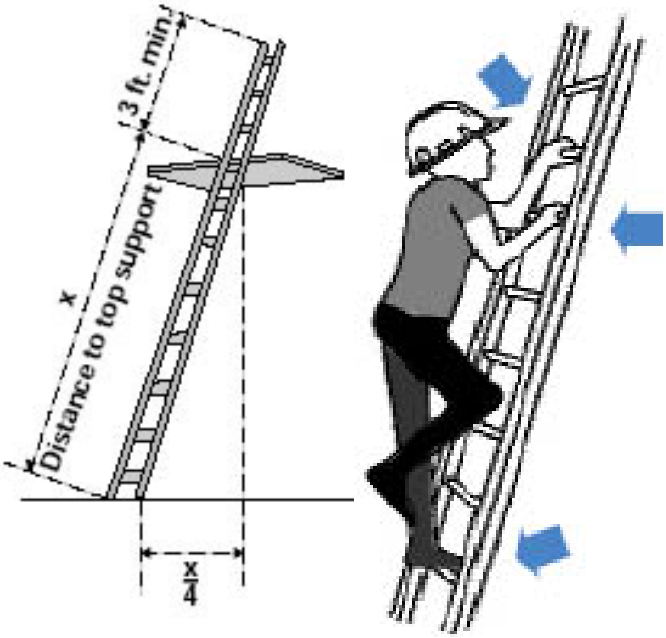


Figure *[Math Processing Error]*: Portable Ladder Safety by OSHA is licensed under Public Domain

Safety Harness

Individuals performing tasks at elevations of six (6) feet or higher should be protected by and specifically trained in the use of an appropriate fall arrest system. Employers are responsible to ensure training for employees that are required by OSHA regulations to use these lifesaving systems. For detailed fall protection requirements and safety guidelines, refer to the OSHA Technical Manual, Section V: Chapter 4 Fall Protection in Construction.

6.10: Getting Acquainted With the Property

Work Order Process

Commercial Maintenance Process

Service Request

A service request can be occupant or operator generated due to a system failure or for preventive/predictive maintenance scheduling.

- **Work Order-** Informs technician of the failure or maintenance procedure for corrective action.
- **Inspection-** Technician assessment for restoring failed component or service of equipment to operable or optimal condition.
- **Repair-** Process of restoring failed component or equipment to operable or original condition.

Repairs often requires the acquisition of parts or materials that may not be immediately available. This may result in **“down time”** for a necessary piece of equipment or facility component until the item can be obtained. In order to restore operation in a timely manner, it is important to obtain the parts that are right for the job by knowing where to look and knowing how to properly describe the item(s) when ordering.

Service Call Procedures

A service call is required if a building or equipment operator finds something wrong with a building system or appliance’s operation.

There are a few steps to follow for a successful service call:

• Display a professional, courteous, and intelligent attitude when dealing with customers.
• Don’t track dirt or mud into the service location.
• Make sure your tools do not cause damage to walls, floors, furniture, or other items.
• Be prepared to show some identification.
• Find the problem.
• Fix the problem.
• Explain what you found and how you fixed it to the customer.
• Fill in the appropriate paperwork in a legible manner.
• Make one last inspection of the work area.
• Clean up any mess you made.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: First Aid

7.1: Safety and Injury Prevention

Introduction

This module will explore different types of injuries that may occur in the home while a HHA/PCA is providing care for a patient. This module will teach how to prevent and provide first aid for falls, burns, cuts, poisoning, and choking. It will also cover fire safety and prevention, and what to do in case of a fire. Lastly, it will cover what to do in case of a serious medical emergency. We will pay special attention to how to handle heart attacks, seizures, and strokes.

Unit A: Injuries

The home is a common place for many unintentional injuries. **Unintentional injuries** are injuries that happen accidentally and are not on purpose. Over 11,000 people die each year in the United States from unintentional injuries, such as falls, drownings, poisonings, and fires (CDC, 2014a). The most common household injuries include: falls, burns, cuts, poisoning, and choking. We will discuss each of these common injuries and focus on how to prevent them.

Falls

A **fall** is a situation in which a person accidentally and suddenly moves from a higher to a lower position, in which injury may or may not occur (Leahy, Fuzy & Grafe, 2013). Worldwide falls are the second leading cause of accidental injury (WHO, 2012). Each year approximately 424,000 people die from a fall globally, with about 80% of these falls occurring in low to middle income countries (WHO). Falls can be caused by many different things. Poor mobility, cognitive impairment, the ingestion of alcohol or drugs, poor balance and coordination, vision loss, and unsafe environments are some of the many possible causes of falls. Side effects from medications, neurological and cardiovascular diseases, and physical disabilities are other reasons why people may fall in the home. Confusion and improperly using assistive devices, such as walkers and canes, also put people at risk for an unintentional injury from a fall.

Developmental changes that occur as children grow and as adults age are also important contributing factors for unintentional injuries from falls. Deaths from falls are highest for adults over the age of 60 years across the globe (WHO, 2012). Adults over 65 years, young adults aged 15-29 years, and children 15 years and younger have the highest **morbidity** rates across the world (WHO).

Injuries from falls can range from relatively mild (such as a bruise) to life-threatening (such as suffering from a hip fracture or brain injury). *Fallpreventionstrategiesarethebestwaytopreventaccidentalinjuryfromfalls.* Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides play a *crucialrole* in preventing falls in the home.

Guidelines for Fall Prevention:

- Keep walkways free of clutter, throw rugs, and loose cords.
- Wipe or mop up spills immediately. Close off areas with wet floors until dry to prevent people from walking on wet areas.
- Do not use wax or use other floor cleaners which will leave the floor slippery.
- Ensure all carpeting is tacked down securely and all rugs have non-skid backing.
- Use non-skid mats in the tub.
- Ensure handrails and grab bars are installed in the shower. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should teach patients how to use them.
- Use good lighting in all rooms of the home. Replace light bulbs that have dimmed or are no longer working.
- Ensure stairwells are properly lit and stairs are sturdy.
- Have patients wear non-skid shoes with tied laces.
- Ensure clothing fits and that pant or dress hems are not so long as to possibly cause the patient to trip.
- Teach patients how to properly use ambulatory devices, such as walkers and canes.
- Have patients use glasses and hearing aids in order to better see and hear what is going on in their surroundings.
- Check for **disorientation** frequently and report any concerns to a supervisor immediately.
- Allow the patient to slowly rise to a standing position by first sitting at the edge of the bed to prevent falls that result from dizziness due to rapid changes in position. This is called **orthostatichypotension**.
- Always lock wheelchair, chair, and bed brakes before completing transfers.
- Keep beds in their lowest position and ensure side rails are up in proper position.

- Frequently ask the patient if they need to use the bathroom and stay close while they are in the restroom to quickly respond to requests for help.
- Assist the patient with muscle strengthening exercises and walking as prescribed by the Care Plan to improve balance, coordination, and strength.
- Keep the home picked up and do not allow shoes, toys, or other items to be left on the floor.
- Keep items such as tissues, the phone, remote controls, and drinks within close reach of the patient so they do not have to reach far to retrieve them.

If a fall does happen, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides must report it immediately to their supervisor. The patient needs to be checked for medical issues prior to helping them up from the floor. *HomeHealthAides/PersonalCareAidesshouldNOTmovetheirpatientuntiltheyhavebeenthoroughlycheckedforinjuryandtheirsupervisorhasgiventhempermissiontomovethem.*

Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides may be asked to complete an **incident report** if their patient falls. If this occurs, remember to only report the facts. Report the situation in a matter of fact manner, without being judgmental or emotional. The agency will provide with specific training as to their requirements in the event of a patient fall.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-1

True or False :

1. It is okay for the Home Health Aide to move a patient when they have fallen. **TrueorFalse? _____**

Multiple Choice

2. Which of the following are ways to prevent a fall?

a). Keep the home clutter free

b). Ensure patient uses their walker correctly.

c). Tell patients to stand quickly when they are seated.

d). Have patients wear non-skid shoes and ensure laces are tied.
[reveal-answer q="851621"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="851621"]1. False 2. A, B, & D

FEEDBACK: 1. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aids should never move a patient when they have fallen without informing a supervisor to ensure that the patient is appropriately assessed. 2. Preventing falls is an important task of the HHA/PCA. Keeping the home clutter free, ensuring ambulatory devices such as canes and walkers are used properly, and encouraging patients to wear non-skid shoes and that shoe laces are tied are ways to prevent falls. HHA/PCAs should have patients rest in a sitting position for a couple of minutes prior to standing to prevent orthostatic hypotension, which can cause a fall.[/hidden-answer]

Burns

Burns are another common unintentional household injury. Burns can be caused by dry or wet heat, chemicals, or electricity. Burns from **dryheat** can occur from fire, irons, hair dryers, curling irons, and stoves (American Institute for Preventive Medicine, 2012; Leahy, Fuzy & Grafe, 2013). Burns from **wet or moist heat** occur from hot liquids, such as hot water or steam (American Institute for Preventive Medicine; Leahy, Fuzy & Grafe). These types of burns are called **scalds**. Scalds can occur within seconds and cause serious injury.**Chemical burns** occur from chemical sources and can also cause serious burns when exposed to skin, or if swallowed, whether intentionally or unintentionally. **Electrical burns** can cause very serious injury as they can burn both the outside and inside of the person's body, causing injury that cannot be seen, and which can be life threatening. Radiation burns can also occur from sources of radiation such as sunlight (American Institute for Preventive Medicine).

Types of Burns

Burns are divided into first, second, and third degree burns.

First degree burns affect only the outer layer of the skin (**epidermis**). These types of burns are the least serious as they are only on the surface of the skin. First degree burns usually appear red, dry, and slightly swollen (MedlinePlus, 2014). Blisters do not occur with this type of burn. They should heal within a couple of days (American Institute for Preventive Medicine, 2012).

Second degree burns affect the top layer of the skin and the second layer of skin underneath (**dermis**). These are more serious than first degree burns. The skin may appear very swollen, red, moist, (MedlinePlus, 2014) and may have blisters or look watery and weepy (American Institute for Preventive Medicine, 2012).

Third degree burns are the most serious burn. A third degree burn affects all layers of the skin and may affect the organs below the surface of the skin. The skin may appear white or black and charred (MedlinePlus, 2014). The person may deny pain because the nerve endings in their skin have been burned away (American Institute for Preventive Medicine, 2012). Third degree burns require *immediate* medical treatment. If Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides suspect their patient has a third degree burn, they should immediately call 911. Emergency services should also be called anytime a patient was exposed to smoke. They need to have their airway checked for possible injury.

Chemical burns can occur anytime a liquid or powder chemical comes into contact with skin or mucous membranes that line the eyes, nose, or throat. Chemical burns may also occur if a chemical is swallowed. These burns can cause serious injury and emergency services should be contacted. If a person receives a chemical burn, the chemical should be removed from the skin by using a gloved hand to brush it off and then wash the area with plenty of cool water. Electrical burns can occur if a person has been using an electrical appliance and is exposed to water or if an electrical short occurs while using the electrical appliance. Using faulty or frayed cords on electrical appliances can result in electrical burns. Electrical burns are a serious injury. Emergency medical services (EMS) should be immediately activated.

Never use oils such as butter or vegetable oil on any type of burn as this can cause further injury. For first or second degree burns flush the area with plenty of cool (not ice cold) water for about 15 minutes or until the pain decreases and cover with a clean, dry bandage. Using ice or ice cold water can cause frostbite (American Institute for Preventive Medicine, 2012). For major burns remove any clothing that is not stuck to the skin, cover the burned area with a dry, clean cloth, and seek emergency assistance.

Guidelines to Prevent Burns:

- Never allow children or confused adults to use electrical appliances unsupervised.
- Never use electrical appliances near water sources.
- Never use electrical appliances in which the cord appears to be damaged or frayed.
- Never pull a plug from the cord. Always remove a cord from an outlet by holding the base of the plug.
- Electrical appliances should NEVER be used in the bathtub, sink, or near running or standing water.
- Cover electrical outlets with child-proof plugs. Never allow children to put anything inside an electrical outlet.
- Never place a metal object inside an electrical appliance while it is plugged in.
- Ensure stoves and other appliances are turned off when finished with them.
- Turn pot handles inward so that a person cannot accidentally bump a handle and spill hot liquids.
- Check water temperature prior to bathing or showering a patient.
- Take care that any hot liquids served are cooled to the point where a patient can safely drink them. Burns can very easily happen from spilling or drinking liquid that is too hot.
- Do not keep hot drinks, soups, or other liquids at the edges of tables or countertops.
- Always inform a patient when giving them something hot to drink or eat.
- Do not allow patients to walk with hot beverages or food in their hands. Have them seated while consuming hot liquids.
- Do not use space heaters and other personal heaters close to a patient where they could accidentally touch or fall against it.
- Check to be sure the hot water heater is not set too high. To avoid scalds from hot tap water, hot water heaters should be set to 120 degrees or less (MedlinePlus, 2014).
- Do not allow children or confused adults to use lighters or matches.
- Discourage smoking in the home, and especially in bed, where a person is at more risk of falling asleep with a lit cigarette.
- Keep chemicals and cleaning solutions securely locked and out of reach of children and confused adults.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-2

True or False :

1. First degree burns are the worst types of burns to have. **True or False?** _____

2. It is okay to use oils on a burn to help soothe the pain. **True or False?** _____

3. If a chemical burn occurs, you should flush the area of the burn with water. **True or False?** _____

4. It is okay to stand on a wet floor and use a hair dryer, as long as it is not a big puddle. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="895911"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="895911"]1. False 2. False 3. True 4. False

FEEDBACK: 1. First degree burns are the least serious type of burn, although the person should always be assessed and treated if necessary as these types of burns can be serious. The HHA/PCA should always inform a supervisor for any burn that has occurred, regardless of how serious they believe the burn to be. Second degree burns are the second most serious type of burn as these burns go through the epidermis and dermis. Third degree burns are the most serious type of burn, going through all layers of the skin and affecting structures and organs below the skin. 2. Never use oil, butter, or margarine to treat a burn. These can cause further injury. Wash a burn with cool water and seek assistance from a supervisor or from emergency services, if necessary. 3. You should immediately wipe away any chemical residue and flush the area with plenty of water. Seek assistance from emergency services and inform a supervisor. 4. Never stand in any water no matter how small it appears while using an electrical appliance. This can result in electrocution which can cause serious injury and even death.[/hidden-answer]

Cuts

Cutscan occur whenever a sharp object pierces through the surface of the skin. Some cuts may be minor and only pierce the surface layer of the skin. An example of a minor cut would be a paper cut. Other cuts can be so deep as to reach muscle, bone, or even an organ. These types of cuts can result in serious injury, and possibly death due to blood loss or internal injury.

Guidelines for Preventing Cuts:

- Keep sharp objects such as knives, razors, blades from kitchen appliances (such as blender or food processor blades), scissors, nail clippers, food graters, and household items that slice and prepare foods (such as a mandolin), out of reach of children and confused adults.
- Teach children how to use scissors and knives safely.
- Never hand a person a sharp object, such as scissors or a knife, with the blade pointing toward them.
- When preparing food using a knife, use a sturdy cutting board that will not slip.
- Ensure your hands are not wet or oily when using knives. Alwayscutwiththebladefacingawayfromyou.
- Keep your fingers away from the knife's edge while chopping and cutting foods.
- Put knives toward the back of the counter when you step away from the prepping area.
- Do not throw away metal can lids, broken glass, or other sharp items without first carefully wrapping them in a container that will prevent accidental cuts.
- Never push garbage down in a garbage pail with your hands. Teach others to avoid doing the same.

Poisoning

There are many hazards in the home which put people at risk for accidental poisoning. **Poisoning** can occur any time a harmful substance is intentionally or unintentionally ingested. Poisons come in many forms including plants, cleaning supplies, spoiled food, and medications. Children, who are naturally curious and like to explore, are in particular at risk for poisoning. Adults who may be confused or who have vision problems are also at risk for accidentally ingesting a substance that could potentially be poisonous. Never allow children or confused adults to have access to potentially harmful chemicals or medications.

Guidelines to Prevent Poisoning:

- Keep all cleaning supplies and chemicals locked.
- All medications should be kept in a locked storage area, out of reach.
- Check medications periodically for expiration dates and properly dispose of expired medications. Some medications become toxic when they are past their expiration date.
- Do not tell children that medication is "candy" as this makes it look more attractive to them.
- Ensure all medications and chemicals are properly labeled. Childproof caps should be on medicine bottles.
- Ensure the patient uses visual aids, such as glasses, when taking their medications and any time they use a household cleaner or chemical.
- Check the refrigerator weekly and dispose of spoiled, moldy, or otherwise compromised food.
- Never use cans that have bulges or deep dents in them.
- Keep poisonous plants out of reach of children and pets.
- Keep the number for Poison Control near a telephone and ensure the family knows who to call in case of an emergency.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-3

True or False

1. The best way to prevent poisoning is to keep cleaning supplies and medications locked and out of the reach of children and confused adults. **True or False?** _____

2. You should keep the phone number to Poison Control near the telephone. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="870789"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="870789"]1. True 2. True

FEEDBACK: 1. Keeping cleaning supplies and medications locked and out of reach of children and confused adults is the best way the HHA/PCA can prevent poisonings. 2. The number to Poison Control should be kept in an easily accessible place, such as near a telephone.[/hidden-answer]

Choking

Choking can occur while a person is eating, drinking, taking medications, or if an object is put into the mouth and accidentally swallowed. Choking means the person's airway is compromised and they are unable to breathe. Some signs of choking include a bluish skin color, inability to talk, cry, or to make any sounds, a weak, ineffective cough, soft or high-pitched sounds while inhaling, ribs and chest pulling inward as the person is having difficulty breathing, and loss of consciousness if left without air (MedlinePlus, 2015). Young children and infants, who love to explore their environment, are especially prone to choking as they often place small objects in their mouth.

Guidelines to Prevent Choking:

- Keep small objects out of reach of children.
- Use age appropriate toys for children. Avoid those with small pieces with young children.
- Cut food into bite-sized pieces for children and those with chewing or swallowing difficulties.
- Prepare food that is of appropriate consistency (such as pureed or special diets), and as according to the Care Plan.
- Ensure patients eat, drink, and take medications in a fully upright position.
- Keep patients who are at risk for choking in an upright position for 30-60 minutes after eating to prevent aspiration of food or liquids.
- Encourage patients to completely chew and swallow food and to eat slowly.
- Discourage patients from talking while eating, as this puts them at risk for choking.
- Do not allow children to play, run, or walk while eating.
- Do not let children have lollipops and other candy with sticks in their mouths while playing or while riding in a car.
- Place babies on their backs while sleeping. Do not allow excessive bedding, pillows, or any stuffed animals in the crib to prevent suffocation. Infants can die from a condition called Sudden Infant Death Syndrome (SIDS). Placing a baby on their back while asleep reduces this risk.
- Avoid food items such as popcorn, nuts, pretzels, gum, and hot dogs with small children and those with swallowing difficulties.
- Never allow children to play with plastic bags, and other small items that can easily be swallowed, like soda bottle caps, rubber bands, balloons, and paper clips.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-4

True or False

1. It is okay to let kids have a lollipop in the car as long as you are watching them. **True or False?** _____

2. Babies should be placed face down in their crib to get the most rest. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="817422"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="817422"]1. False 2. False

FEEDBACK: 1. Never let children have lollipops in the car. If the car stops suddenly, the lollipop can lodge into the child's throat and cause choking. This could cause a serious injury or even death. 2. Babies should always be placed on their backs during sleep. Stuffed animals, pillows, and a lot of bedding should be removed from a crib or where the infant is sleeping. Infants can die from a condition called Sudden Infant Death Syndrome (SIDS). Placing a baby on their back while asleep reduces this risk.[/hidden-answer]

Factors Contributing to Injuries among Older Adults

As people age, they may experience physical, sensory, and cognitive changes that make them more likely to suffer an injury.Adults over the age of 65 are the most likely age group to fall (WHO, 2012).Older adults tend to have more physical diseases and take more medications. The more medications a person takes, the more they are at risk for potential medication interactions and side effects. Muscle weakness, injury, disability, coordination, or balance problems also put older adults at risk for falls. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should teach patients to properly use ambulatory aids such as walkers and canes. Encourage good non-skid footwear while ambulating.

Older adults who experience confusion, as a result of dementia or illness, may not be completely aware of their surroundings and may not be as cautious while moving about as they normally would. Sensory impairments, such as vision problems and hearing loss, also put older adults at risk for falls as they may not adequately see or hear what is going on in their surroundings.As we age, we also have a reduction in our ability to taste and smell. This makes us more likely to not smell smoke if there is a fire, or to eat food that is spoiled without being aware.

Factors Contributing to Injuries Involving Young Children

Children are another high risk group for falls. Their natural curiosity, and the developmental tasks they are experiencing, in which independence and risk-taking behaviors come about, makes them prone to accidents involving falls. Ensure that stairways are blocked off from small children with gates. Do not allow children to climb stairs, ladders, or other surfaces unsupervised. Teach them to tie their shoelaces and ensure they wear good non-skid shoes.

Children are also especially prone to choking as they like to put items into their mouth as they explore the world. Ensure that toys are age appropriate and that very young children are not allowed to play with toys and games with very small pieces. Keep medications and cleaning solutions locked and out of reach. Use child-proof covers for outlets, child-proof locks for cabinets which hold cleaning supplies, and child-proof caps on medications.

Children are developing their gross motor skills and may not have very good balance and coordination. Teach them to use rails when walking on stairs. Teach children to hold your hand and to look both ways when crossing a street. Supervise children while they are playing outdoors and in activities such as bike riding, skating, or skateboarding. Never allow young children to bathe or swim unsupervised in order to prevent possible drowning.

With infants, keep in mind that they must always be supervised. *Neverleaveababyunattended.* Never walk away from a baby while giving a bath as they do not have the muscle development to keep their head out of water and could potentially drown. Feed babies with their heads higher than their bodies and burp them in between feedings to prevent choking. Do not keep stuffed animals and excessive bedding in a baby's crib. Keep babies on their backs while sleeping to prevent possible suffocation.

As children tend to lack a sense of fear and have a strong desire to explore their world, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides must always be watching for potential hazards in their environment. Keep the environment clutter free and teach children to pick up their toys and shoes.

Where Household Injuries Commonly Occur

Two areas in the home, the kitchen and the bathroom, are the places where most household injuries occur (Leahy, Fuzy & Grafe, 2013). People tend to spend a lot of time in both of these areas in the home. They are also places where many dangers lie.

In the kitchen, using appliances improperly or near water could result in electrical injury. Other hazards in the kitchen include walking on a wet or greasy floor, improperly using knives, fire hazards while using the stove, and ingesting spoiled food or dangerous chemicals.

In the bathroom, potential hazards involve slipping on a wet floor or in the bathtub, using appliances such as hair dryers near water, unsafe use of razors or scissors, and the ingestion of medications and other potentially dangerous substances.

Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should take special precautions in the kitchen and bathroom to ensure that floors are dry, non-skid rugs and bath mats are utilized, handrails and grab bars are available, and sharp objects are put away when not in use. Cleaning solutions, chemicals, and medications should be kept in locked cabinets and out of reach of children and confused patients.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-5

1. Which of the following is the most common place for an injury to occur in the home?

a). Bathroom

b). Living room

c). Bedroom

d). Laundry room

2. Which of the following is a way to prevent an injury in the kitchen?

a). Leave to go to the bathroom while you are cooking on the stove.

b). Keep knives on the counter with the blades pointing out.

c). Turn pot handles inward.

d). Wait to mop up spills on the floor until you are done cooking.
[reveal-answer q="503353"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="503353"]1. A 2. C

FEEDBACK: 1. The kitchen and bathroom are two of the most common places for an injury to occur in the home. There are many hazards in both rooms for which the HHA/PCA should be observant to protect their patient from. 2. Turning pot handles inward helps to prevent burn injuries in the kitchen. If a pot handle is facing outward, there is a higher risk that someone could knock into it or burn their hands on the handle. This is especially true when there are children and confused adults within the home. Never leave food unattended while cooking on the stove, always keep knife blades pointing inward, and always immediately wipe up spills to prevent accidents.[/hidden-answer]

Unit B: Role of the Home Care Worker in Injury Prevention

Managing the Environment

As the eyes and ears of the healthcare team, the Home Health Aide/Personal Care Aide plays a very important role in preventing patient injuries. They will be the person spending the most time in the home, and will become very knowledgeable about their patient, their family, and any changes in their condition and within their environment.

The key for Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides in preventing injury with patients is to properly manage the environment, and to use all of their senses as they observe the patient within their environment. By completing household tasks within the home, they will be helping to keep the patient's home free from clutter, dirt, pests, and infection. By assisting their patient with daily living tasks, such as bathing, they will help to maintain their well-being and general health.

Proper Body Mechanics

The use of proper body mechanics is an important way to prevent injury to the health care worker as well as to the patient. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should always keep in mind proper body mechanics during their work with patients, whether it is while bathing, ambulating, or assisting with transfers. Ensure all the equipment used with the patient is in good working order. Always keep in mind the importance of ensuring locks are braked on wheelchairs, chairs, and beds, to prevent accidental injuries.

Handwashing

To prevent the transmission of disease, proper hand washing is of utmost importance and is the number one way to prevent the spread of infection (CDC, 2014b). Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides must wash their hands prior to and after contact with patients and their belongings. Ensure that they wash their hands after contact with body fluids such as blood, urine, feces, and vomit. Gloves should be worn whenever they come into contact with body fluids, food, or while performing household chores such as laundry in which body fluids may be present. Remember to wash hands when removing gloves and to change gloves whenever they are soiled or ripped.

Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides have an important role in educating their patients and their families about the importance of handwashing. Encourage the patients to wash their hands after using the bathroom, before preparing food or eating, after contact with any body fluids, or whenever they are soiled. For patients who are immobile or who have difficulty with mobility, Home

Health Aides/Personal Care Aides can provide them with a wet, soapy washcloth or alcohol sanitizer to use to keep their hands clean and free of germs.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-6

True or False

1. Handwashing is the best way to prevent the spread of infection. **True or False?** _____

2. Gloves should be worn whenever the HHA/PCA may come into contact with bodily fluids and when performing household tasks such as cooking and laundry. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="787097"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="787097"]1. True 2. True

FEEDBACK: 1. Handwashing is the number one way to prevent the spread of infection. HHA/PCAs should take care to always wash their hands prior to and after contact with patients and their belongings. They also have an important role in educating patients and their families about the importance of handwashing. 2. Gloves should always be worn when there is a chance of contact with bodily fluids such as while performing patient care and doing laundry. Gloves should also be worn when using cleaning supplies and when preparing food for others.[/hidden-answer]

Fire Safety

In addition to preventing accidental injuries from falls, burns, cuts, choking, and poisoning, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides also play an important role in fire prevention and fire safety. They must be aware of potential fire hazards and take steps to prevent fires.

Guidelines for Fire Prevention:

- Ensure smoke detectors and carbon monoxide detectors are present on every floor in the home, including the basement. The batteries should be changed at least once per year (CDC, 2014a). If their patient's home does not have detectors, discuss their concern with their supervisor. There may be community and agency resources available to provide these to the patient.
- Check batteries in smoke and carbon monoxide detectors several times a year to ensure they are properly working.
- Encourage and assist families to develop fire safety plans and to practice fire drills.
- Every family should have a designated safe meeting place in the event they must leave the home during a fire.
- Every bedroom should have at least two exits (CDC, 2014a).
- Teach children fire safety.
- Teach patients to stop, drop, and roll if their clothing ever catches on fire.
- Never leave unattended candles or items such as incense that have a flame where a potential burn can occur. Discourage patients to use these items if they require supervision to do so.
- Do not smoke in the home and discourage patients and family from doing so. Ensure cigarettes are fully extinguished. Prior to emptying ashtrays, ensure there are no hot ashes.
- Never leave the stove unattended while cooking.
- Pay attention that pots do not boil over.
- Take care not to splash oil while cooking to prevent grease fires.
- Empty the lint trap after every use of the dryer. Never run the dryer when you are not home.
- Never leave space heaters, electric heaters, kerosene, or gas heaters on unattended and when someone is not home. Ensure all these types of appliances are in good working order.
- Ensure fire extinguishers are in the home, that they have not expired, and that you and others in the family know how to use them.
- Do not store fire extinguishers near the stove where you may not be able to reach it if there is a fire on the stove.
- Do not wear loose clothing while working on the stove. Teach patients to roll up sleeves and to also avoid wearing loose clothing while cooking.
- Ensure hallways and exits, such as doorways and windows are not cluttered to prevent emergency exit.
- Keep emergency numbers near the phone for easy access.

How to Use a Fire Extinguisher:

When using a fire extinguisher, the acronym **PASS** should be kept in mind.

- **P:** Pull the pin
- **A:** Aim at the base of the fire
- **S:** Squeeze the handle
- **S:** Sweep back and forth at the base of the fire

In Case of Fire:

In case of fire, remember the acronym RACE.

- **R:** Remove patients from danger
- **A:** Activate 911
- **C:** Contain the fire if safe and possible to do so
- **E:** Extinguish fire or call the fire department to do so

Other Things to Remember in Case of a Fire:

- The first priority is to get you and the patient to safety.
- Remain calm and direct the patient and others in the home to safety.
- Never try to put out a large fire or put yourself or others in danger.
- Stay low in rooms with fire.
- Close doors and if possible, plug doorways with blankets to prevent smoke from entering.
- Place a wet towel over the patient's face and your face to decrease smoke inhalation.
- Should a person's clothing catch on fire, remember to tell them to stop, drop, and roll.
- Keep the patient and all others far away from the home once you have left.
- Wait for instruction from the fire department.
- Notify the supervisor once you have reached a safe destination.

Self-Check Activity M11-7

1. Put in order how you should use a fire extinguisher:

1). Pull the pin

2). Sweep back and forth at the base of the fire

3). Squeeze the handle

4). Aim at the base of the fire

True or False

2. The first priority is to get the patient and yourself to safety. **True or False?** _____

Multiple Choice

3. Which of the following is not a way to prevent fires?

a). Teach children fire safety

b). Do not smoke in the home

c). Check batteries in smoke detectors at least twice per year

d). Turn the dryer on right before you leave the house

True or False

4. You should call the fire department if there is a fire before you call a supervisor or anyone else. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="883072"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="883072"]1. 1, 4, 3, and 2 2. True 3. D 4. True

FEEDBACK: 1. Remember the acronym PASS for how to use a fire extinguisher. Pull the pin, aim at the base of the fire, squeeze the handle, and sweep back and forth at the base of the fire. 2. Safety is always the first priority when dealing with a fire. Do not go back in the home or stall leaving in order to retrieve belongings. The most important thing is to get yourself and the patient to safety. 3. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides play an important role in preventing fires and educating patients and their families about fire prevention. Teach children and adults fire safety, do not smoke in the home, and check batteries in smoke

detectors at least once per year. The dryer should never be on when leaving the house. The HHA/PCA should also be sure to empty the lint trap prior to using the dryer every time in order to prevent fires.[/hidden-answer]

Personal Safety

It is important that Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides take precautions to keep themselves safe while working within the community and in the patient's home. They should follow these guidelines to protect their safety.

- Always know the route. Have maps and directions with you and know where you are going in advance. If needed, call the patient for directions or obtain them from the agency prior to leaving for the destination.
- If you have a cell phone, keep it charged and with you. Do not use it while driving.
- Do not take unsafe shortcuts while driving or walking to and from a patient's home.
- Never alter your route without telling the agency. Always inform a supervisor about your whereabouts.
- Observe surroundings at all times and remain **vigilant**. Do not become distracted by talking, music, or using a cell phone.
- Keep your eyes on the road while driving and look around at your surroundings while walking to and from a patient's home.
- Do not carry a purse, large amounts of money, or wear expensive jewelry. This makes you a target for possible thieves. If you must carry a purse or belongings, hold them securely against your body.
- Lock your car and keep valuables hidden in the trunk, out of sight.
- Carry your keys in your hand so that you can quickly unlock your door.
- Park in well-lit areas and try to park as close to the patient's home as possible to reduce walking time.
- If you ever feel unsafe, leave the area immediately and go to a safer location. Call a supervisor for assistance.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-8

True or False

1. It is okay to use your cell phone while driving as long as it is to call a supervisor. **True or False?** _____

Multiple Choice

2. Which of the following are ways to keep safe? **Selectall.**

a). Do not carry a purse.

b). Lock car doors.

c). Always inform a supervisor if there is a change in route or appointment.

d). Keep aware of your surroundings while walking or driving.

e). Park in well-lit areas.

f). Leave an area if you feel unsafe.
[reveal-answer q="831408"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="831408"]1. False 2. All answers are correct

FEEDBACK: 1. Never use your phone while driving, regardless of reason. Always pull into a safe location and stop driving if you must use your phone. 2. Ways the HHA/PCA can keep safe include not carrying a purse, locking car doors while driving or parked, inform others such as a supervisor if you have a change in your route, be observant of your surroundings, park in well-lit areas, and never stay in an area if you feel unsafe.[/hidden-answer]

Pets

Some patients may have pets in their home. Find out prior to going to a patient's home for the first visit if they have pets on the premises. Ask the patient how their pet is around strangers. If the patient says that the pets are aggressive or do not like strangers, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should inform their supervisor and seek direction from him or her. Ask the patients to place their pets in a secured area during a visit. When being introduced to a pet, such as a dog, remain calm. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should allow the pet to become familiar with them. Do not begin petting him or her before they become acquainted with you. Some pets are more friendly and accepting of strangers.

While walking to and from their car, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should be aware of pets in the neighborhood. Should there be a loose dog, try to stay away from the dog. Do not start panicking or running. This will make it more likely that the animal

will run toward you. A Home Health Aide/Personal Care Aide should cross the street or return to their car if they are concerned about their safety.

If Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should receive a dog bite from any dog, wash the area with water and soap for several minutes to wash away the saliva and accompanying bacteria. *Donotsqueezethesiteofthebite.* This pulls bacteria inside the wound. Inform the supervisor of the incident. Seek medical attention if necessary. Obtain the identifying information about the dog and vaccination records, such as rabies vaccination. If the pet is not up to date with **immunizations**, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides will need to get the rabies vaccination when they seek medical treatment.

Self-Check Activity M11-9

True or False :

1. If you get bitten by a dog, you must see a copy of a recent rabies vaccination. **True or False?** _____

2. It is okay to pet any dog that walks up to you as long as it looks friendly. **True or False?** _____

[reveal-answer q="717205"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="717205"]1. True 2. False

FEEDBACK: 1. Rabies is a fatal disease if left untreated. If the HHA/PCA should get bitten by a dog, they should ask the owners to see a copy of the rabies vaccination to ensure they are up to date with their immunizations. If they are not, the HHA/PCA will need to seek immediate medical attention to receive the rabies vaccination. 2. Never pet any dog you do not know even if it appears friendly and walks right up to you. Keep your safety in your awareness at all times.[/hidden-answer]

Transportation Safety

It is important for Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides to stay safe while driving to and from their patient's home. Follow these guidelines for transportation safety.

- Be familiar with the roads and stay aware of surroundings.
- Have directions and a map handy.
- Ensure there is always enough fuel in the car. This helps to prevent unwanted stops in strange areas.
- If using your personal car, ensure it stays in good operating condition. Keep up to date with your annual inspection and keep insurance and registration materials current and in the car.
- Ensure that tires are inflated to the appropriate pressure and obtain vehicle maintenance on a regular basis.
- Know how to drive in **inclement** weather.
- Drive the appropriate speed limit to prevent accidents and tickets.
- Drive with the car doors locked.
- Never use a cell phone while driving. To avoid other distractions, limit talking and music.
- Always wear a seat belt. Ensure other car occupants wear their seat belt.
- Remember that there should be no children under the age of 12 riding in the front seat.
- All children must wear seat belts in the car.
- Child safety seats must be used with children under 8 years of age. Inspect the child safety seat frequently to ensure it is in good working order. Make sure you know how to use it. If you do not, ask the patient or a supervisor for instructions.
- Never ingest alcohol or drugs prior to or during driving.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-10

1. Which of the following are ways to keep safe while using transportation?

a). Keep distractions to a minimum while driving.

b). Always wear a seatbelt.

c). All children under 8 years of age must use a car seat.

d). Always obey the speed limit.

e). Drive with car doors locked.

f). Never use alcohol or drugs before or while driving.

g). Keep your car in good working order.

h). Always know the route to your destination.
[reveal-answer q="857550"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="857550"]1. All are correct

FEEDBACK: The Home Health Aide/Personal Care Aide should follow safety precautions while driving to and from work. Keep distractions such as talking and music to a minimum. Never use a phone while driving. Always ensure you and others in the car are wearing a seatbelt. All children under the age of 8 must be in a car seat. Obey the speed limit, keep your car in good working order with a full tank of gas, and drive with the doors locked. Obey the speed limit at all times, never use alcohol or drugs prior to or while driving, and know the route to your destination to avoid stopping in unfamiliar areas.[/hidden-answer]

Unit C: What to Do When Injuries and Emergencies Happen

While Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides work to keep their patient and their home safe, there are situations where an accident may occur. It is important that Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides are aware of their agency's policies regarding incidents. Most agencies will have provided them with training in how to deal with emergency situations. This will include the agency's policies and procedures and an emergency contact list.If Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides have not been informed about their agency's policies and procedures, they should speak with their supervisor to find out what the procedures are in dealing with emergencies. Whenever in doubt, call a supervisor.

First Aid Techniques

Falls

If a patient falls, it is important to immediately assess them and for Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides to inform their supervisor.

- If they are trained to take vital signs, such as blood pressure, they should do so.
- Check to see if the patient has hit their head.
- Never move someone who appears to have hit their head or who may have a back injury. This could do more damage.
- Check for cuts, bleeding, and any obvious injuries.
- If there is an injury, try to determine the extent of the injury. Report any observations made to a supervisor or to emergency medical services, if there is a need for emergency help.
- If there is bleeding, put on gloves and apply pressure to the wound with a clean and dry towel.
- Note how long it takes for the blood to saturate the towel and report this to a supervisor and/or emergency medical services.
- If there is a need for additional towels, place another clean towel on top of current one. Do not let up pressure on the bleed.
- Never leave a patient alone who has fallen. Stay with the patient until additional help arrives.
- Document all injuries and steps taken to provide care.

Bruises

A **bruise** forms when blood vessels below the skin's surface break and blood leaks into the tissue beneath the skin (Mayo Clinic, 2014). Bruises can range from very small to quite large, covering large areas of the body. Bruises change color as they heal. Remember the acronym **RICE**when treating bruises (WebMD, 2014a).

- **R(Rest):** Encourage the patient to rest the affected area to prevent further injury and to allow it to heal.
- **I(ice):** If the skin is not broken, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should immediately apply a cool cloth or ice pack (wrapped in a towel to protect the patient's skin) to the area for about 20 minutes. This can be repeated several times a day, as directed by the Care Plan. Remember to never apply ice directly on skin as this could cause injury to the skin. Do not use heat and encourage the patient to avoid hot showers and baths for the first 48 hours after injury as this will encourage swelling (WebMD, 2014a).
- **C(compression):** Wrap the area of injury with an ACE bandage, if directed by the Care Plan or a supervisor. **Compression** helps to relieve swelling and pain. Remember not to wrap the area too tightly as this could cause further injury. Signs the bandage is too tight are numbness, tingling, coolness in the affected area, increased pain, or swelling below the area that is wrapped (WebMD, 2014a).
- **E(elevate):** Elevate the bruise above the level of the person's heart if possible. This will help to decrease swelling.

Seek further guidance from a supervisor. **RemembertoinformhimorherofANYinjuryapatienthassustained.** Document all injuries and steps taken to provide care.

If the bruise covers a large area of the body and appears to be serious, or if a **hematoma** has developed, or if skin has broken and the patient is bleeding profusely (a lot), activate emergency services. Call 911. Calmly inform EMS of the situation and the observations made. It is also important to inform EMS if the patient is on any **anticoagulants** (blood thinners). Anticoagulants cause blood to take a longer time to clot. This will result in a longer bleed time and could be potentially life threatening to the patient.

HomeSelf-Check Activity M11-11

1. A person on anticoagulants will bleed:

a). for a longer time

b). for a shorter time

2. The acronym RICE, which is used to treat bruises and injuries, stands for which of the following?

a). Reassure, Inquire, Cold compress, Elevate

b). Rest, Ice, Compression, Elevate

c). Rest, Ice, Cool water, Emergency

d). Reassure, Instill heat, Calm, Electricity
[reveal-answer q="351729"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="351729"]1. A 2. B

FEEDBACK: 1. People taking anticoagulants will bleed for a longer period of time as this type of medication is used to prevent blood clots. It can present a serious issue if an injury occurs as a person can potentially lose a lot of blood. 2. The acronym RICE is used to treat bruises. It stands for Rest, Ice, Compression, and Elevation. The person should rest the injured area, ice should be applied for 20 minutes at a time, and the area can be wrapped with a bandage, and elevated to reduce swelling.[/hidden-answer]

Cuts and Scrapes

For minor cuts and scrapes, basic first aid at home may be adequate. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should still inform their supervisor of the situation and seek guidance from them in caring for the wound.

- Always wash hands and apply gloves when performing first aid.
- Basic first aid for caring for cuts and scrapes includes first washing the area with cool water. The cool water will wash away any debris that may be in the wound and will help blood vessels to **constrict** (become narrow), which helps to stop bleeding. Do not use soap.
- Once the area is clean and the blood has decreased, place gentle pressure on the wound with a clean and sterile gauze pad. Add additional gauze if the first gauze saturates with blood. Do not remove the gauze pad as this could cause any clots that have begun to form to be removed and bleeding to continue.
- When the wound has stopped bleeding, dress the area with a clean bandage.
- Document all injuries and steps taken to provide care.

Dizziness/Fainting

- Should a patient report that they feel dizzy, immediately lower them to a seated or lying down position.
- Remember to always allow a patient time to sit on the edge of a bed or chair and dangle their legs before rising to a standing position. This will help prevent falls from feeling light-headed or dizzy if the patient experiences orthostatic hypotension.
- If a patient is standing or walking and reports they feel faint, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should lower them to a chair or to the ground if a chair or bed is not nearby.
- If possible, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides can wrap their arms around the patient's waist securely, and using good body mechanics, lower them to the floor.
- Avoid having their head hit the ground or nearby objects.
- While lowering the patient to the floor, keep a wide stance to provide a strong base of support, and bend using the knees to slowly and carefully lower the patient to the floor.
- Document all injuries and instances when patients report dizziness or faintness and the steps taken to provide care.

Self-Check Activity M11-12

True or False

1. If a patient feels faint, attempts should be made to lower them to a chair or the ground to prevent a fall. **True or False?** _____

2. It is important to allow a patient time to sit on the edge of the bed before standing to prevent dizziness and falls. **True or False?** _____

[reveal-answer q="903591"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="903591"]1. True 2. True

FEEDBACK: 1. If a patient reports feeling faint the HHA/PCA should have them sit immediately or assist with lowering them to a chair or the floor to prevent a fall. 2. To prevent orthostatic hypotension, always allow a patient to sit and dangle their legs at the edge of a bed prior to standing.[/hidden-answer]

Burns
The treatment of burns depends on the type of burn.
Treating Minor Burns:
The first step in providing first aid to a patient who has suffered a burn is to remove them from the source of the heat.
For first and second degree burns that are limited to a small area, apply a clean, cool towel or cloth to the area of the burn for about 15 minutes to help decrease pain.
Do not use ice as this could result in frostbite (American Institute for Preventive Medicine, 2012).
Once the pain from the burn has subsided, allow the area to dry for a few minutes, and then apply a clean, dry sterile piece of gauze to the area. Tape the edges down.
Never apply ointments or grease to the area of the burn. Do not use margarine, butter, or oil on the burn.
A supervisor should be informed and the patient should be examined with further treatment provided if necessary.
While the burn is healing over the next few days, keep the area clean and dry. Apply clean dressings to the area as directed by the Care Plan.
If blisters form, do not break them. Allow blisters to heal naturally. Until the skin is healed, avoid using lotion, soaps, and perfumes directly on the area.
Treating Third Degree or Large Burns:
For third degree burns, remove the person from the heat source.
Ensure that their airway is kept open and they continue to breathe.
If they stop breathing, or they can no longer feel a pulse, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should perform CPR immediately **iftheyaretrainedinCPR**.
Stay with the patient at all times.
Keep the patient calm and call 911 immediately.
Do not remove clothing that is stuck on the person as you risk tearing skin off with the clothing.
Keep the area of the burn clean. Cover it with a clean bandage or sheet until help arrives.
Do not put pressure on the burn and protect it from friction (MedlinePlus, 2014).
To prevent shock if a serious burn has occurred, keep the person warm and lay them flat.
If they have not suffered from a head, neck, or back injury, elevate their feet and stay with them until help arrives.
Do not immerse the person in water as this could cause the person to go into shock.
Treating Chemical Burns:
If a patient is exposed to a chemical, remove the chemical from their skin immediately.
Activate EMS by calling 911.
Flush their skin with cool water for 20 minutes.
If their clothing has come into contact with the chemical, remove the affected clothing.
Treating Electrical Burns:
In the case of electrical burns, special precautions must be made.
NEVER touch a person who has been electrocuted with bare hands.
911 should be called immediately.
The appliance should be unplugged if it can be done safely.
Do not use anything metal or wet to remove the electrical source.
If possible, switch off the main power supply.

If the appliance is standing in water, do NOT touch it.
Never stand in any water, even if it is a small puddle, while touching an electrical appliance.

It is important to remember that the person suffering the electrical burn should be removed from the source of electricity only if it can be done safely. If so, stand on a dry surface such as a rubber mat, pile of papers or books, and use a dry wooden object such as a broom handle to push the person away from the electricity source (WebMD, 2014b). Never use anything with metal or that is wet.

Remember, HomeHealthAides/PersonalCareAidesshouldreportANYburntotheirsupervisor. The patient needs to be examined and further treatment provided. Always call 911 for any serious burn, for any burn that occurs on a large area of the body, on the head, neck, hands, feet, face, genitals, for burns that occur on more than one part of the body, if smoke has been inhaled, if the person is having trouble breathing after a burn, or if an infant, child, or a very elderly person has suffered from a burn. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should also call for help if the burn was caused by chemicals or electricity. Document all injuries and steps taken to provide care. An incident report will likely need to be completed.

Self-Check Activity m11-13

Self-Check Activity M11-13

True or False

1. You should never use any electrical appliance near or while standing in water. **True or False?** _____

2. You should first remove the heat source if a patient has received a burn. **True or False?** _____

3. You should always call 911 if a person has received an electrical burn. **True or False?** _____

4. Ice should be used instead of cool water to soothe a minor burn. **True or False?** _____

5. It is very important to keep any burn clean and covered. **True or False?** _____

6. EMS should be activated if a burn occurs on a large area, on young children or the very old, or if smoke has been inhaled. **True or False?** _____

7. It is okay to break a blister from a burn after a couple of days to help the wound heal. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="173702"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="173702"]1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True 6. True 7. False

FEEDBACK: 1. Electrical appliances should never be used while near or standing in water. Electrocution can occur, causing severe injury or death. 2. The source of the heat should be immediately removed from a patient who has suffered a burn, if it is safe for the HHA/PCA to do so. Continuous contact with a heat source will cause the patient to suffer continuous burning and increase the severity of the injury. 3. Due to the fact that burns from electrical sources can cause internal injury which is not visible to the naked eye, anyone suffering an electrical burn should be seen by a physician. Emergency medical services should be contacted immediately. 4. Cool water should be used to soothe a burned area. Never use ice as this could cause frostbite, which can be damaging. 5. It is important for burns to be kept clean and covered with dry dressings immediately after the burn once it has been cooled and during the healing process. A person with a burn is at an increased risk for infection as their skin has been compromised. Keeping the area clean and dry will help to prevent infection. 6. Burns that cover a large area of the body, or that have been experienced by a person who is older or very young should receive medical attention and emergency medical services should be contacted. Older people and younger people are more at risk for loss of body water and body heat. They are also at greater risk for infection. When smoke has been inhaled, it is important to seek medical attention as the airway could be compromised which could result in a person suffering serious injury or even death. 7. Never break a blister on a healing burn. Blisters keep the skin intact, which helps to prevent infection. Breaking a blister allows microorganisms to enter the person's body. [/hidden-answer]

Choking

If a patient is choking and is unable to breathe, cough, or speak, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides must take **immediateaction** and call 911. Permanent brain damage could occur in as little as 4-6 minutes if the person is unable to breathe (MedlinePlus, 2015a). Providing first aid quickly can save a person's life.

Try to encourage them to cough to remove the object or food.

Stay with them at all times while you are waiting for help.

Use your senses of observation to determine the cause and extent of the choking. Did the person swallow an object or did the choking happen while they were eating, drinking, or taking medicine? Are they able to breathe? Are they turning blue (cyanotic)? Do you hear soft or high pitched sounds when they are trying to breathe? Are they unable to make any sound or cry? Are they unable to cough or is the cough weak and ineffective (not working)?

Heimlich Maneuver

If needed, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides must be prepared to perform abdominal thruststo help dislodge the object from the person's airway. This method is called the **Heimlichmaneuver**. Thrusts are given slightly above the belly button. Each thrust pushes air from the lungs, which can help remove an object that is blocking the airway (American Heart Association, 2011).

Remembertoonlydothisifthepersoncannotbreathe, cough, orspeak. A person who is choking might use the choking sign (holding the neck with one or both hands (American Heart Association, 2011). Ask if they need help and if they are choking prior to performing abdominal thrusts.

Performing the Heimlich maneuver for a person who is standing or seated, according to American Heart Association (2011) guidelines:

Ask, "Are you choking?" If the person nods or indicates yes, tell them you are going to help.

Stand behind the person and wrap your arms around their waist so your hands are in front.

Make a fist with one hand, and place your thumb against the person's abdomen, just above their belly button. Make sure your hand is well below the breast bone.

With your other hand, grasp the fist that is against their abdomen and quickly thrust upward into the person's abdomen.

Give thrusts until the object is forced out and the person can breathe, cough, or talk, or until the person stops responding.

If the person loses consciousness, lower them to the floor and begin CPR**iftrainedtodoso**.

Keep the person in a lying up position so that their head is facing up.

Ensure their airway is not blocked.

If a person is lying on their back you may also straddle a person facing their head and push your grasped fist inward and upward in a similar manner to performing abdominal thrusts on a person who is standing (MedlinePlus, 2015a).

Performing the Heimlich maneuver for a person who is pregnant or very large and you can't wrap your arms fully around the waist, according to American Heart Association (2011) guidelines:

Follow the same steps for performing the Heimlich maneuver except for where you place your hands.

Ask, “Are you choking?” If the person nods or indicates yes, tell them you are going to help.
Put your arms under the person’s armpits and your hands on the lower half of the breastbone.
Pull straight back to give chest thrusts.
Performing the Heimlich maneuver for a person who has lost consciousness, according to American Heart Association (2011) guidelines:
If a person stops responding while you are giving abdominal thrusts, lower them gently to the ground. Ensure their airway remains free and they are in a face up position.
Check to see if the person needs CPR. If you do not know how to give CPR, give hands-only CPR.
Emergency medical services should be contacted immediately.
Continue CPR until the person is able to speak, moves, or breathes, or someone with more advanced training takes over.
Performing hands-only CPR:
Your agency may provide training or require you to receive CPR certification. You should only provide CPR if you are trained to do so. For those who are not trained to provide CPR, **hands–onlyCPR** can be performed until someone with more advanced training arrives.Hands-only CPR has two easy steps (American Heart Association, 2014). If you see a teen or adult suddenly collapse:

1. Call 911 or the emergency medical services phone number in your area.

2. Push hard and fast in the center of the chest. You should push at a rate of 100 compressions per minute.

It is helpful to push following the beat to a popular disco song by the Bee Gees called, “Stayin’ Alive”. You can watch a video of Hands-only CPR published by the American Heart Association at: http://cpr.heart.org/AHAECC/CPRAndECC/Programs/HandsOnlyCPR/UCM_473196_Hands–Only–CPR.jsp

Performing abdominal thrusts on an infant is a different process than that used for adults. Choking in infants is usually caused by the infant putting something in their mouth (MedlinePlus, 2015b).
Performing the Heimlich maneuver in an infant according to American Heart Association (2011) guidelines:
Kneel or sit with the infant in your lap.
Lay the infant face down on your forearm, across your lap or thigh.
Provide support to his or her head and neck by placing your one hand under their chin to hold it steady. Be sure to not compress the soft tissues of the infant’s throat.
The baby’s head should be facing downward, lower than their body. This helps to provide gravity so the object can be removed.
Using the heel of your hand (bottom part of your hand) provide 5 back slaps to the baby’s back, between the shoulder blades.
If the object becomes dislodged, you can stop.
If the object is still stuck, turn the baby face side up. Take care to turn the baby as one unit, supporting the head and neck as you do so.
Provide support to his or her back with your forearms, resting the baby on your lap or thigh.
Provide support to the infant’s head and neck with the palm of your hand.
Provide 5 downward chest thrusts at a rate of 1 per second, by using 2 fingers in the center of their breastbone and quickly press down, compressing their chest about 1 ½ inches (4 cm).
You can repeat this process until the infant expels the object or until they lose consciousness.
Remember, 5 backslapswiththebabyfacedown, andthen5 chestthrustswiththebabyfaceup.

Document all instances of choking and steps taken to provide care. The supervisor should always be informed about any instances of choking. A patient who has experienced choking or has had the Heimlich maneuver performed should be assessed by a healthcare provider.

Self-Check Activity M11-14

Put the steps in order

1. Put the steps of performing the Heimlich maneuver on an adult in order:

a). Make a fist with one hand.

b). Thrust inward and upward.

c). Grasp the fist against the abdomen with your free hand.

d). Place your thumb against the person’s abdomen, just above their belly button.

e). Stand behind the person.

True or False

2. When performing the Heimlich maneuver on an infant, you should provide 5 back thrusts with the baby face down and then 5 chest thrusts with the baby face up until the object is dislodged. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="980588"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="980588"]1. E, A, D, C, B 2. True

FEEDBACK: 1. The order of performing abdominal thrusts, otherwise known as the Heimlich maneuver are as follows: Stand behind the person; make a fist with one hand; place your thumb against the abdomen just above the belly button; grasp the fist with your other hand; and thrust inward and upward until the object is dislodged. 2. Performing abdominal thrusts on an infant is different than an adult. Five back slaps and then 5 chest compressions are performed until the object is dislodged. Care should always be taken to support the head and neck of the infant.[/hidden-answer]

Poisoning
If Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides suspect or know that poisoning has occurred, they should try to determine the source of the poison. This is important information which they will need to provide to Poison Control in order for them to best help. Look for nearby medications, chemicals and cleaning solutions that the patient may have ingested.

Immediatelycall Poison Control and follow their directions. The treatment for poisons depends on the type of poison that was ingested. Notify a supervisor as soon as feasible. *Nevertrytomakeapatientvomit, unlessspecificallyinstructedtodoso.* Some chemicals may cause severe harm if they come back up the esophagus (throat) during vomiting.

If the poison is a dry powder or solid substance, and you can safely do so, with a gloved hand brush off the poison and rinse the contaminated area with plenty of water for at least 20 minutes (American Heart Association, 2011).

If the poison affected the eye, the person should rinse their eye with plenty of water, making sure the eye containing the poison is the lower eye, the closest to the bottom of the sink while rinsing (American Heart Association, 2011). This will prevent the unaffected eye from getting poison in it.

If the poison is within the air, such as a chemical or if a person has experienced exposure to carbon monoxide, contact emergency medical services, and get the person out of the area and into an area with fresh air, if it is safe to do so.

Document all poisonings and steps taken to provide care. You may be asked to complete an incident report, if required by your agency. All patients who have suffered from poisoning should be assessed by their healthcare provider.
What to Do in Serious Medical Emergencies
Should a serious medical emergency occur, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should assess the situation using their observational senses. Note what is seen, heard, felt, and smelled. Immediately call for help. Activate emergency medical services (EMS) by dialing 911. Inform them in a calm and matter of fact way what occurred and the observations made. *Neverleavethevictimunattended.*
ABCsofFirstAid
KeepinmindtheABCsoffirstaid. The ABCs of first aid stand for **A(Airway), B(Breathing), andC(Circulation)**. It is important to remember this acronym as any delay in treatment when a patient has a compromised airway, breathing, or circulation could result in serious injury, and possibly death.
Assessing the ABCs:
Airway
Is the patient's airway (mouth, nose), open?
Is there an obstruction which makes it impossible for them to breathe?
If there is an obstruction and the person is unable to breathe, activate EMS and perform the Heimlich maneuver to try to remove the obstruction.
Breathing
Is the person breathing?
Can you see the chest rise and fall as they breathe?
Can you feel air move in and out of their mouth or nose?
If the answer is no to any of these questions, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should activate EMS and begin CPR **iftrainedtodoso**. Hands-only CPR can be performed if you are not trained in CPR.
Circulation

Do they have a pulse?
How is their color? Are they blue from lack of oxygen?
Does their skin feel warm to the touch or cold? Cold skin means not enough blood is pumping through the body.
If the person does not have a pulse, Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides should activate EMS and perform CPR**iftrainedtodoso**.

Take note of the ABCs of first aid. Activate emergency medical services if any of the ABCs are compromised. Report your observations to EMS. Stay with the patient. **Iftrained**, perform CPR.
Myocardial Infarction (Heart Attack)
A **myocardial infarction**, also known as a heart attack, is a situation when the heart loses adequate oxygen supply.*Amyocardialinfarctionisamedicalemergencyandhelpmustbeobtainedimmediately*. The first few minutes of a heart attack are the most important and treatments given during this time will be most successful (American Heart Association, 2011).
Signsofaheartattack:
Chest pain
Pain that **radiates** (extends) to the jaw, arm, or back
Nausea, vomiting
Intense chest pressure (a feeling of heaviness and pressure)
Diaphoresis(intense sweating)
The patient clutches their chest
Dyspnea (difficulty breathing)
Shortness of breath
Cyanosis (blue or gray appearance of the skin)
Indigestion or heartburn
Cold and clammy skin
Weak and irregular pulse
A sense of anxiety or impending doom
Whattodo:
Immediately call 911 or the emergency medical services number in your area to obtain help.
Follow all instructions provided to you by emergency services.
Loosen any clothing around the patient's neck.
Place them in a comfortable position and encourage them to rest. Activity uses oxygen, which the heart does not have enough of during a heart attack.
Do not give the patient anything to eat or drink.
Observe their breathing rate and pulse. If trained to take vital signs, do so.
If the patient stops breathing or no longer has a pulse, perform CPR**iftrainedtodoso**. Perform hands-only CPR if you are not trained in CPR.
Stay with the patient until help arrives.
Inform a supervisor as soon as possible about the incident.
Document the situation and all steps taken to provide care.

Self-Check Activity m11-15

Self-Check Activity M11-15

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following are signs of a heart attack? **Selectallthatapply.**

a). Diaphoresis

b). Jaw pain

c). Indigestion

d). Nausea

e). Anxiety

f). Shortness of breath

g). Cyanosis

h). Left arm pain

i). Chest pain

True or False

2. True or False: You should call 911 immediately if you suspect a person is having a heart attack. True or False? _____
[reveal-answer q=”417774″]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a=”417774″]1. All are signs of a heart attack. 2. True

FEEDBACK: 1. Diaphoresis (sweating), chest pain which radiates to the jaw or arm, dyspnea (shortness of breath), nausea, anxiety, cyanosis (blue-gray appearance to the skin), and indigestion are all possible signs of a heart attack. The HHA/PCA should immediately contact emergency services and remain with the patient until help arrives. Keep the patient calm, seated, and as

relaxed as possible. 2. Emergency medical services (911) should be contacted immediately if the HHA/PCA suspects a heart attack. The first minutes of a heart attack are the most crucial. Help during this time could save the person's life.[/hidden-answer]

Seizures

A **seizure**is disorder in which there is increased electrical activity of the brain. There are a variety of causes of seizures, such as head injury, low blood sugar, a heat-related injury, medical conditions, or poisonings (American Heart Association, 2011). In some types of seizures, the person has uncontrollable muscle movements. **Tonic–clonic seizures** have two phases: tonic and clonic. In the *tonicphase*, the person's muscles contract and spasm. In the *clonicphase*, the person has repeated muscle movements, and their arms, legs, and torso may jerk violently.

Signsofaseizure:

Signs of a seizure depend on the type of seizure disorder the patient has. Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides may notice:

Suddenly falling or dropping from a seated or standing position

Loss of muscle control

Repeated blinking of the eyes, smacking of the lips, or repeated swallowing

The person is not able to follow commands

Inability to swallow

Drooling

Repeated contractions and movements of the arms, legs, or torso

Shaking or jerking of the body

The person stops responding

Whattodo:

If a patient has a seizure, it is important to obtain medical help immediately. Remember to never put anything in the person's mouth during a seizure and never try to hold them down. The Home Health Aide/Personal Care Aide's job during a seizure is to contact emergency medical services and to try to protect the patient from injury. Never leave a person during a seizure.

Immediately call 911.

Note the time the seizure began. Provide this information to 911.

Place the patient in a comfortable position. Keep their head face up so they can breathe.

Loosen any tight clothing.

If possible, place a pillow, blanket, or towel under the patient's head to prevent injury.

Clear the area of any possible hazard for which the patient could become injured.

Neverputanything, includingfingers, inthepatient'smouthduringaseizure.

If they begin to vomit, roll them onto their side. Make sure their mouth is not obstructed.

Nevertrytoholdapatientdownwhiletheyarehavingaseizure.

Keep the area clear of objects and people.

Do not give the patient food or fluid.

Note the time when the seizure is over. Check for adequate breathing and pulse.

If the person stops breathing or no longer has a pulse, perform CPR**iftrainedtodoso**. If not trained in CPR, perform hands-only CPR.

Inform a supervisor as soon as possible about the incident.

Document the seizure and all steps taken to provide care.

Self-Check Activity M11-16

True or False

1. EMS should be activated if a person is having a seizure. **True or False?** _____

2. A person should never put any objects or fingers inside a person's mouth while they are having a seizure. **True or False?** _____

3. Never restrain a person during a seizure. **True or False?** _____

4. It is important to time when the seizure starts and stops. **True or False?** _____

5. All furniture and other dangerous objects should be removed from the area while a person is having a seizure to prevent any injury. **True or False?** _____

[reveal-answer q="173272"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="173272"]1. True 2. True 3. True 4. True 5. True

FEEDBACK: 1. Emergency medical services should be contacted as soon as a person has a seizure. The person needs medical attention. 2. Never put objects or fingers inside a person's mouth during a seizure. They will likely bite down although they will not be able to help it. 3. A person having a seizure should never be restrained. Rapid and repeated muscle contractions and jerky movements are common during a seizure. Restraining a person while they are having a seizure can cause them serious injury. 4. The HHA/PCA should time when the seizure starts and stops and provide this information to emergency medical services and the healthcare team. This will help give important information about the severity of the seizure. 5. After contacting emergency services the most important thing the HHA/PCA can do for a person during a seizure is to protect them from injury. Removing furniture, dangerous objects, and people from the area will help prevent further injury to the person having the seizure.[/hidden-answer]

Cerebrovascular Accident (Stroke)
A **cerebrovascularaccident** is also known as a stroke. A stroke can occur when the brain loses adequate oxygen supply. A stroke is a medical emergency. Obtain help immediately by calling 911. Remember the acronym FAST when assessing someone for possible stroke.

FAST **:**

F: Facialdrooping. Is one side of the face drooping down and appear uneven?

A: Armweakness. Can the person raise one arm or is one side weak or paralyzed?

S: Speechdifficulties. Is the speech slurred or difficult to understand?

T: Time. Time is critical. If Home Health Aides/Personal Care Aides suspect a possible stroke, they should call 911 immediately!
Signsofastroke:
Drooping of the eye, face, or mouth
Sudden weakness or paralysis of a hand, arm, leg, or foot. This usually occurs on one side of the body.
Sudden inability to speak or swallow
Tingling or numbness in an arm, hand, leg, or foot
Sudden headache
The patient reports suddenly having trouble seeing
Sudden weakness
Problems with balance, coordination
Difficulty concentrating, remembering things
Dizziness, fainting
Whattodo:
Immediately call 911 and obtain emergency assistance.
Keep the person in a comfortable, resting position.
Loosen any tight clothing.
Do not give the patient any food or liquid to drink.
Note the time the stroke began. This is important information to provide to emergency services as it will help determine the course of treatment the person can receive.
See if the person needs CPR. If they do, perform CPR **iftrainedtodoso**. If not trained in CPR, perform hands-only CPR.

Self-Check Activity M11-17

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following are signs of a possible stroke? **Selectallthatapply.**

a). Facial drooping

b). Tingling or numbness in a hand or foot

c). Difficulty speaking

d). Sudden weakness

e). Trouble seeing

f). Paralysis of an arm or leg

True or False

2. If a patient has any signs of having a stroke, 911 should be called immediately. **True or False?** _____
[reveal-answer q="776901"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="776901"]1. All are signs of a possible stroke 2. True

FEEDBACK: 1. Signs of a stroke include: facial drooping, tingling or numbness in the hands or feet, difficulty speaking, sudden weakness or difficulty seeing, or paralysis of an arm or leg. 2. 911 or emergency medical services should be contacted at the first sign of a person having a stroke. Time is of utmost importance for a person having a stroke. The types of treatments are affected by how much time has elapsed since the stroke started. The sooner a person having a stroke receives help, the more likely they will have a better outcome.[/hidden-answer]

DiabetesandLowBloodSugar
Diabetes is a condition in which the person is unable to make enough **insulin** to properly use glucose. Too much or too little **glucose** (sugar) can cause serious problems for a person. Some diabetics take insulin to manage their diabetes. In some instances they may have taken too much insulin or took their insulin but either did not eat enough or waited too long to eat or if they have been exercising too much without enough food. This can cause their blood sugar levels to drop. If a person goes for too long with too low of a blood sugar level they can have a seizure, go into a coma, and even die. It is important that the HHA/PCA act quickly and be observant for signs of low blood sugar for patients who have diabetes.
Signsoflowbloodsugar:
A change in behavior such as confusion or irritability
Sleepiness or drowsiness
Hunger or thirst
Weakness
Sweating
Pale skin color
Seizures
Whattodo:
If the person can sit up and swallow, give them something that contains sugar to eat or drink.
Allow the person to rest and sit or lie down.
Contact emergency medical services
Inform your supervisor and document the incident.
Itisimportanttorememberwhengivingsomeonewithlowbloodsugartoeatordrinkthatthefoodordrinkcontainssugar. Foods or drinks to use include: fruit juice, soda, honey, milk, or sugar packets mixed in juice. Never give a person with low blood sugar a diet drink or food as it does not contain sugar in it. The goal is to increase their sugar levels. If in doubt whether the patient has too high or too low blood sugar, it is better to give them something with sugar to prevent seizures or coma. Too high blood sugar levels are less dangerous than too low blood sugar levels.

Self-Check Activity M11-18

1. Which of the following items could be used to increase blood sugar levels of a person with low blood sugar? **Selectallthatapply.**

a). salad

b). diet soda

c). milk

d). orange juice

e). sugar packets or honey
[reveal-answer q="173856"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="173856"]C, D, and E

FEEDBACK: It is important to remember when giving someone with low blood sugar to eat or drink that the food or drink contains sugar. Never give a person with low blood sugar a diet drink or food as it does not contain sugar in it. Salad and diet soda does not contain sugar. Milk, orange juice, and sugar packets or honey all contain sugar. Always inform a supervisor of any medical emergency. Report all injuries and incidents, no matter how insignificant (small) they seem. Always call for help for any

serious medical emergency. Document all injuries and steps taken to provide care carefully and accurately. Whenever in doubt, seek guidance from a supervisor.[/hidden-answer]

HomePost-test

1. Which of the following are ways a HHA/PCA can prevent falls? **Selectallthatapply.**
    1. Have patients dangle legs at the edge of the bed prior to standing.
    2. Keep living areas clutter free.
    3. Use non skid mats in the bathtub.
    4. Ensure handrails in the bathroom are in good working order.
    5. Encourage patients to put on glasses and use ambulation aids correctly.
2. **True or False:** It is okay for a HHA/PCA to immediately help a patient up who has fallen, before calling a supervisor.
3. This is the most serious type of burn, in which skin may be white or black, organs below the skin may be visible and 911 should be contacted immediately.
    1. First degree burn
    2. Second degree burn
    3. Third degree burn
4. Which is the best way to prevent a burn?
    1. Use hair dryers while brushing teeth.
    2. Pull electrical appliances from the outlet by the cord.
    3. Check temperatures of bath water and hot drinks.
    4. Keep pot handles facing outward so they can be easily reached.
5. Put in order how you should use a fire extinguisher:
    1. Sweep back and forth at the base of the fire
    2. Pull the pin
    3. Squeeze the handle
    4. Aim at the base of the fire
6. **True or False:** The best way to prevent poisoning is to keep cleaning solutions, chemicals, and medications locked and out of the reach of children and confused adults.
7. **True or False:** If a suspected or known poisoning has occurred, Poison Control should be immediately contacted and the HHA/PCA should not make the person vomit, unless specifically instructed to do so.
8. Which of the following are ways to keep children safe? **Selectallthatapply.**
    1. Provide age appropriate toys.
    2. Supervise outdoor play.
    3. Never leave babies or children in a bathtub unsupervised.
    4. Never leave a baby unattended.
    5. Feed babies with their heads higher than their bodies and burp often.
    6. Keep babies on their backs while sleeping and avoid placing stuffed animals and a lot of bedding in cribs.
9. Which of the following are ways to keep safe while using transportation? **Selectallthatapply.**
    1. Keep distractions to a minimum while driving.
    2. The driver and all passengers must wear a seatbelt.
    3. All children under 8 years of age must use a car seat.
    4. Always obey the speed limit.
    5. Drive with car doors locked.
    6. Never use alcohol or drugs before or while driving.
    7. Keep your car in good working order.
    8. Always know the route to your destination.
10. Put the steps of performing the Heimlich maneuver on an adult in order:
    1. Make a fist with one hand.
    2. Thrust inward and upward.
    3. Grasp the fist with your free hand against the abdomen.

4. Place your thumb against the person's abdomen, just above their belly button.
5. Stand behind the person.

11. **True or False:** When performing the Heimlich maneuver on an infant, you should provide 5 back thrusts with the baby face down and then 5 chest thrusts with the baby face up until the object is dislodged.
12. Which of the following is the best way to prevent an injury in the bathroom?
    1. Leave medications out on the counter for an easy reminder.
    2. Ensure handrails are installed in showers and bath mats are used.
    3. Leave towels and dirty clothing on the bathroom floor.
    4. Keep scissors and razors on the bathroom sink for easy access.
13. Which of the following are signs of a heart attack? **Selectallthatapply.**
    1. Diaphoresis
    2. Pain that radiates to the jaw, arm, or back
    3. Chest pain or pressure
    4. Nausea and/or vomiting
    5. Shortness of breath
    6. Patient clutches their chest
14. Which of the following are signs of a possible stroke? **Selectallthatapply.**
    1. Facial drooping
    2. Tingling or numbness in a hand or foot
    3. Difficulty speaking
    4. Sudden weakness
    5. Trouble seeing
    6. Paralysis of an arm or leg
15. **True or False:** If a patient has a seizure, the HHA/PCA should immediately activate EMS, remove dangerous objects from the patient's area, avoid putting objects into the patient's mouth, and time the seizure.
16. **True or False:** You should call 911 immediately if you suspect a person is having a heart attack or stroke.
17. **True or False:** The ABCs of first aid include: Airway (checking for an open airway), Breathing (checking if the patient is breathing), and Circulation (checking if the patient has a pulse and good skin color).
18. **True or False:** Gloves should always be worn whenever the HHA/PCA will come into contact with body fluids such as blood, urine, or feces.
19. **True or False:** A supervisor should be informed any time there has been an injury, no matter how insignificant the HHA/PCA thinks it was.
20. **True or False:** All injuries and steps taken to provide care for the patient after the injury should be accurately documented.

[reveal-answer q="994882"]Show Answer[/reveal-answer]
[hidden-answer a="994882"]1. All are ways HHAs/PCAs can prevent falls

2. False

3. C

4. C

5. B, D, C, A

6. True

7. True

8. All are ways to keep children safe

9. All are correct

10. E, A, D, C, B

11. True

12. B

13. All are signs of a heart attack

14. All are signs of a possible stroke

15. True

16. True

17. True

18. True

19. True

20. True[/hidden-answer]

References

American Heart Association. (2011). *BLSforhealthcareproviders: Studentmanual*.Dallas, Texas: American Heart Association.

American Heart Association. (2011). *Heartsaverfirstaid: Studentworkbook*. Dallas, Texas: American Heart Association.

American Heart Association. (2014). 2014 Hands-only CPR fact sheet. Retrieved from http://www.heart.org/idc/groups/heartpublic/@wcm/@ecc/documents/downloadable/ucm_441302.pdf

American Institute for Preventive Medicine. (2012). Burns. Retrieved from http://www.healthylife.com/online/He...SEA/Burns.html

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2014a, May 19). Injury prevention. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/healthyhomes/bytopic/injury.html

Center for Disease Control. (2014b, October 17). When & how to wash your hands. Retrieved from www.cdc.gov/handwashing/when-how-handwashing.html

Leahy, W., Fuzy, J., & Grafe, J. (2013). *Providinghomecare: Atextbookforhomehealthaides* (4th ed.). Albuquerque, NM: Hartman.

Mayo Clinic. (2014). Bruise: First aid. Retrieved from http://www.mayoclinic.org/first-aid/first-aid- bruise/basics/art-20056663

MedlinePlus (2014, July 22). Burns. In *A.D.A.M. MedicalEncyclopedia*. Retrieved from http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000030.htm

MedlinePlus (2015a, April 12). Abdominal thrusts. In *A.D.A.M. MedicalEncyclopedia*. Retrieved from https://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000047.htm

MedlinePlus (2015b, April 14). Choking-Infant under 1 year. In *A.D.A.M. MedicalEncyclopedia*. Retrieved from https://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000048.htm

WebMD. (2014a, November 14). Bruises and blood spots under the skin: Home treatment. Retrieved from http://www.webmd.com/first-aid/tc/bruises-and-blood-spots-under-the-skin-home-treatment

WebMD. (2014b, November 14). First aid for electrical burns: Topic overview. Retrieved from http://www.webmd.com/first-aid/tc/first-aid-for-electrical-burns-topic-overview

World Health Organization. (2012, October). Falls fact sheet (No. 344). Retrieved from http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs344/en/

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Maintenance Hand and Power Tools

8.1: Tool Choices and Applications

Although there are numerous advantages to choosing tools based on many factors, safety should be the first factor to be considered.

Always choose the right tool for the job- Remember that tools have specific functions.

- Screwdrivers are not impact resistant and should never be used as a chisel or pry bar.
- Accessories used in cordless impact drivers must be rated for impact use.

Determine the scope of work- Consider where you will be working:

- Small or large project?
- What tasks will you be performing?
- How much space do you have to safely perform your tasks?
- What are the tools best suited to the tasks?
- What PPE is required for each task?


Figure 8.1.1: Construction Technology Program C3T Image 8366 is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Material type and size- Choice of tools and accessories should be based on the type and size of material being used.

Examples:

- Specially designed masonry drill bits, saw blades, and grinding wheels are used for masonry, concrete, brick and tile.
- Anchor bolts are rated by the amount of weight they will safely support, with many styles available for application with specific materials.
- A circular saw may be better suited for the task than a table or miter saw for small jobs.
- Do the material and tools to be used require an additional person to assist in the safe completion of the task due to the weight or physical size of the material?

Figure 8.1.1: UHMC Construction Technology Program, C3T Image 8252 is licensed under CC BY 4.0

8.2: Measuring, Marking, Leveling and Layout Tools

Measuring and marking tools are common to multiple trades and ensure accuracy and quality craftsmanship in the building and construction process. Measuring devices are available in fractional and metric, with classic western construction practices adopting the fractional inch configuration. While some measuring tools have the actual fractions printed (1/2″, 1/4″, and 1/8″) next to each corresponding mark on the scale, many do not and the ability to read the scale without the printed fractions may take time to develop. This is one of many reasons for the adage: “Measure twice, cut once”, which is a good habit to develop and will help to avoid costly mistakes such as over cutting and wasting material or under cutting, resulting in having to remeasure and cut the material again.

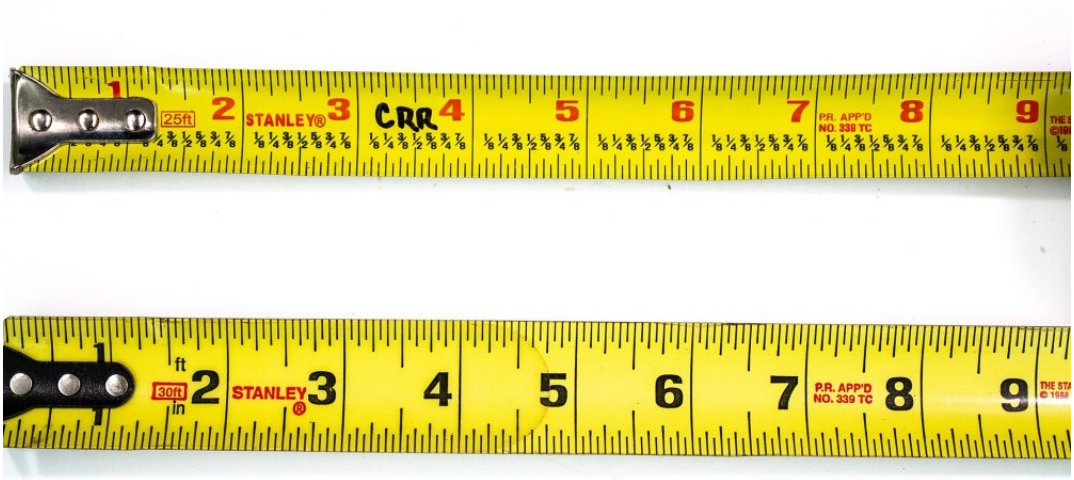


Figure 8.2.1: Fractional Marked & Unmarked Tape Measures by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

While many of the following tools may be considered “carpentry” tools, the majority are regularly used in most all trades. Apparent common items to all trades include measuring devices like tape measures, rulers, and basic estimation tools; plumbers and electricians will use spirit levels, builders levels, and angle finders to ensure that piping is at an appropriate grade or conduit, fixtures, and other items are installed to meet industry codes.

Levels are used to check for **level (horizontal)** and **plumb (vertical)**. Trades persons will often use a combination of various levels and squares to complete a project.

Squares are used for layout work to mark square (90°/right angle) and other angles commonly used in building and construction trades indicated on specific types of squares. They are also used to check for squareness and other angles during assembly. Squares can be made of inexpensive molded plastic, lightweight aluminum or durable steel.

8.3: Nails, Hammers and Pneumatic Nailers

Nails

Nails of all sizes are commonly used to assemble wood products when glue and adhesives are not of sufficient strength for a project. They are known by number size, the lesser the number, the smaller the length and diameter. The number is followed by the letter “d”. The d is the symbol for penny, which can be traced back as far as the Ancient Roman Empire. There are various theories as to how the measurement term came to be, but what is confirmed is that the d stands for the Roman coin denarius, or in English, the penny. The denarius was the coin which many people used in the Roman empire at the time when Rome occupied what is now England, so that’s why it’s called a penny but uses a “d” as the symbol.

Some styles of nails have larger heads for greater holding power while others have smaller or no head so that it can be set flush with or lower than material surfaces for cosmetic applications. When “headless” finish or casing nails are used, it is best to drive them to just slightly above the surface while being careful not to leave hammer marks on the material’s being nailed surface and then use a “nail set” tool to embed the nail.

Size	Length (inches)	Diameter (inches)	Standard Wire Guage	Number Per Pound
2d	1	0.072	15	900
3d	1.25	0.080	14	615
4d	1.5	0.090	12	322
5d	1.75	0.098	12	254
6d	2	0.113	11	200
7d	2.25	0.113	11	154
8d	2.5	0.131	10	106
9d	2.75	0.131	10	85
10d	3	0.148	9	74
12d	3.25	0.148	9	57
16d	3.5	0.162	8	46
20d	4	0.192	6	29
30d	4.5	0.207	5	23
40d	5	0.225	4	17
50d	5.5	0.244	3	14
60d	6	0.262	2	11

Common Nails for Building & Construction Projects

Hammers

Hammers are used to strike or cause impact and are available in traditional designs and in a variety of models, sizes, and weights to perform specific tasks. Selecting the proper hammer for a particular task can be the determining factor for being able to complete the task or be the difference between quality and sub-par craftsmanship. The following list describes the most common types of hammers and some of the types of tasks they are often used for.

General Hammer Use

No matter which type of hammer is used, employing proper techniques will help prevent injury.

- Wear safety glasses when striking any object with any type of hammer or tool.
- For hardwood, before nailing with hammer, drill pilot hole in material to prevent splitting.
- Choose a hammer weight that is comfortable.
- “Set” the nail by tapping in the point, remove the free hand before driving the nail.
- Using the center of the hammer face, drive the nail with smooth, firm blows.
- Striking face should always be parallel with the surface being hit.
- Avoid sideways or glancing blows.
- Always strike with the hammer face.
- Avoid impact with handle or shaft of hammer.

Nail Gun Safety

The following information is compiled from OSHA safety literature. Please go to https://www.osha.gov/Publications/Na..._optimized.pdf if you wish to view the brochure in it’s entirety.

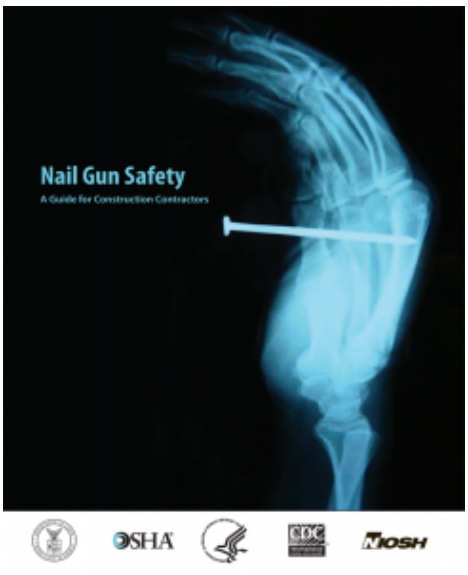


Figure 8.3.1

- Department of Health and Human Services: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
- Department of Labor: Occupational Safety and Health Administration

This guidance document is not a standard or regulation, and it creates no new legal obligations. It contains recommendations as well as descriptions of mandatory safety and health standards [and other regulatory requirements]. The recommendations are advisory in nature, informational in content, and are intended to assist employers in providing a safe and healthful workplace. The Occupational Safety and Health Act requires employers to comply with safety and health standards and regulations promulgated by OSHA or by a state with an OSHA-approved state plan. In addition, the Act’s General Duty Clause, Section 5(a)(1), requires employers to provide their employees with a workplace free from recognized hazards likely to cause death or serious physical harm.

Nail guns are used every day on many construction jobs—especially in residential construction. Thy boost productivity but also cause tens of thousands of painful injuries each year. Nail gun injuries are common—one study found that 2 out of 5 residential carpenter apprentices experienced a nail gun injury over a four-year period. When they do occur, these injuries are often not reported or given any medical treatment. Research has identified the risk factors that make nail gun injuries more likely to occur. The type of trigger system and the extent of training are important factors. The risk of a nail gun injury is twice as high when using a multi-shot contact trigger as when using a single-shot sequential
trigger nailer.

The guidance is for residential home builders and construction contractors, subcontractors, and supervisors. NIOSH and OSHA developed this publication to give construction employers the information they need to prevent nail gun injuries. Types of triggers and key terms are described. The guidance highlights what is known about nail gun injuries, including the parts of the body most often injured and the types of severe injuries that have been reported. Common causes of nail gun injuries are discussed and six practical steps that contractors can take to prevent these injuries are described. These are:

1) Use full sequential trigger nail guns;
2) Provide training;
3) Establish nail gun work procedures;
4) Provide personal protective equipment (PPE);
5) Encourage reporting and discussion of injuries and close calls; and
6) Provide fist aid and medical treatment.

The guidance includes actual workplace cases along with a short section on other types of nail gun hazards and sources of additional information.

Introduction to Nail Gun Safety

How likely are nail gun injuries?

Nail guns are powerful, easy to operate, and boost productivity for nailing tasks. They are also responsible for an estimated 37,000 emergency room visits each year. Severe nail gun injuries have led to construction worker deaths.

Nail gun injuries are common in residential construction. About two-thirds of these injuries occur in framing and sheathing work. Injuries also often occur in roofing and exterior siding and finishing

A study of apprentice carpenters found that:

- 2 out of 5 were injured using a nail gun during their 4 years of training.
- 1 out of 5 were injured twice.
- 1 out of 10 were injured three or more times.

Worksite Story – A 26-year-old Idaho construction worker died following a nail gun accident in April 2007. He was framing a house when he slipped and fell. His finger was on the contact trigger of the nail gun he was using. The nosepiece hit his head as he fell, driving a 3-inch nail into his skull. The nail injured his brain stem, causing his death. The safety controls on the nail gun were found to be intact. Death and serious injury can occur using nail guns—even when they are working properly.

More than half of reported nail gun injuries are to the hand and fingers. One quarter of these hand injuries involve structural damage to tendons, joints, nerves, and bones. After hands, the next most often injured are the leg, knee, thigh, foot, and toes. Less common are injuries to the forearm or wrist, head and neck, and trunk. Serious nail gun injuries to the spinal cord, head, neck, eye, internal organs, and bones have been reported. Injuries have resulted in paralysis, blindness, brain damage, bone fractures, and death.

Nail guns present a number of hazards and risks. NIOSH and OSHA prepared this publication to provide builders and contractors with the latest information on nail gun hazards and practical advice on the steps they should take to prevent nail gun injuries on their construction jobs.

This guide covers nail guns (also called nailers) used for fastening wood, shingles, and siding materials. The guide refers specifically to pneumatic tools but also applies to nail guns that use gas, electric, or hybrid power sources. It does NOT cover powder actuated tools used for fastening material to metal or concrete. The guide assumes that contractors are generally familiar with how nail guns work and the various types of specialized nail guns (for example, framing, roofing, flooring)

This guide is applicable to all nail guns. The emphasis is on framing (“stick” and “coil”) nail guns because they fie the largest nails, are the most powerful, and are considered to be the most dangerous to use.

Know Your Triggers

Nail gun safety starts with understanding the various trigger mechanisms. Here is what you need to know:

How Triggers Differ

All nailers rely on two basic controls: a finger trigger and a contact safety tip located on the nose of the gun. Trigger mechanisms can vary based on: 1) the order in which the controls are activated, and 2) whether the trigger can be held in the squeezed position to discharge multiple nails OR if it must be released and then squeezed again for each individual nail. Combining these variations gives four kinds of triggers. Some nail guns have a selective trigger switch which allows the user to choose among two or more trigger systems. Each trigger type is described below along with a summary of how the controls are activated.

The bottom line: contractors should check the tool label and manual for manufacturer-specific trigger names and operating information.

Worksite Story – Two framers were working together to lay down and nail a subfloor. One framer was waiting and holding the nail gun with his finger on the contact trigger. The other framer was walking backwards toward him and dragging a sheet of plywood. The framer handling the plywood backed into the tip of the nail gun and was shot in the back. The nail nicked his kidney, but fortunately he recovered. As a result of this incident, the contractor switched to using only sequential triggers on framing nail guns. Co-workers can get injured if they bump into your contact trigger nail gun. You can prevent this by using a full sequential trigger.

How do Nail Gun Injuries Happen?

Useful Terms

- **Recoil** is the rapid rebound or kickback after the nailer is fired.
- A **double fire** occurs when a second nail unintentionally fires because the nailer re-contacted the work piece after recoil. It can also occur if the safety contact slips while the user is positioning the nail gun. Several tool manufacturers offer “anti-double fire” features for their nail guns.

There are seven major risk factors that can lead to a nail gun injury. Understanding them will help you to prevent injuries on your jobsites.

1. Unintended nail discharge from double fire. Occurs with CONTACT triggers.

The Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) found that contact trigger nailers are susceptible to double firing, especially when trying to accurately place the nailer against the work piece. They found that a second unintended firing can happen faster than the user is able to react and release the trigger. Unintended nails can cause injuries.

Double fire can be a particular problem for new workers who may push hard on the tool to compensate for recoil. It can also occur when the user is working in an awkward position, such as in tight spaces where the gun doesn’t have enough space to recoil. The recoil of the gun itself can even cause a non-nail injury in tight spaces if the nail gun hits the user’s head or face.

2. Unintended nail discharge from knocking the safety contact with the trigger squeezed. Occurs with CONTACT and SINGLE ACTUATION triggers.

Nail guns with contact and single actuation triggers will fire if the trigger is being held squeezed and the safety contact tip gets knocked or pushed into an object or person by mistake. For example, a framer might knock his leg going down a ladder or bump into a co-worker passing through a doorway. Contact trigger nailers can release multiple nails and single actuation trigger nailers can release a single nail to cause injury.

Holding or carrying contact trigger or single actuation trigger nail guns with the trigger squeezed increases the risk of unintended nail discharge. Construction workers tend to keep a finger on the trigger because it is more natural to hold and carry an 8-pound nail gun using a full, four-finger grip. Tool manufacturers, however, do warn against it.

Common nail gun grip by OSHA is licensed under Public Domain

3. Nail penetration through lumber work piece. Occurs with ALL trigger types.

Nails can pass through a work piece and either hit the worker's hand or fly of as a projectile (airborne) nail. A blow-out nail is one example. Blow-outs can occur when a nail is placed near a knot in the wood. Knots involve a change in wood grain, which creates both weak spots and hard spots that can make the nail change direction and exit the work piece. Nail penetration is especially a concern for placement work where a piece of lumber needs to be held in place by hand. If the nail misses or breaks through the lumber it can injure the non-dominant hand holding it.

4. Nail ricochet after striking a hard surface or metal feature. Occurs with ALL trigger types.

When a nail hits a hard surface, it has to change direction and it can bounce of the surface, becoming a projectile. Wood knots and metal framing hardware are common causes of ricochets. Problems have also been noted with ricochets when nailing into dense laminated beams. Ricochet nails can strike the worker or a co-worker to cause an injury.

5. Missing the work piece. Occurs with ALL trigger types.

Injuries may occur when the tip of the nail gun does not make full contact with the work piece and the discharged nail becomes airborne. This can occur when nailing near the edge of a work piece, such as a plate. Positioning the safety contact is more difficult in these situations and sometimes the fired nail completely misses the lumber. Injuries have also occurred when a nail shot through plywood or oriented strand board sheeting missed a stud and became airborne.

Nail penetration through the lumber is a special concern where the piece is held in place by hand. Nail gun by OSHA is licensed under Public Domain

6. Awkward position nailing. Occurs with ALL trigger types. Unintended discharges are a concern in awkward position work with CONTACT and SINGLE ACTUATION triggers.

Nailing in awkward positions where the tool and its recoil are more difficult to control may increase the risk of injury. These include toe-nailing, nailing above shoulder height, nailing in tight quarters, holding the nail gun with the non-dominant hand, nailing while on a ladder, or nailing when the user's body is in the line of fie (nailing towards yourself). Toe-nailing is awkward because the gun cannot be held flush against the work piece. Nailing from a ladder makes it difficult to position the nail gun accurately. Nailing beyond a comfortable reach distance from a ladder, elevated work platform, or leading edge also places the user at risk for a fall.

Toe-nailing by OSHA is licensed under Public Domain

7. Bypassing safety mechanisms. Occurs with ALL trigger types.

Bypassing or disabling certain features of either the trigger or safety contact tip is an important risk of injury. For example, removing the spring from the safety contact tip makes an unintended discharge even more likely. Modifying tools can lead to safety problems for anyone who uses the nail gun. Nail gun manufacturers strongly recommend against bypassing safety features, and voluntary standards prohibit modifications or tampering. OSHA's Construction standard at 29 CFR 1926.300(a) requires that all hand and power tools and similar equipment, whether furnished by the employer or the employee shall be maintained in a safe condition.

About 1 in 10 nail gun injuries happen to co-workers. This is from either airborne (projectile) nails or bumping into a co-worker while carrying a contact trigger nail gun with the trigger squeezed.

You Should Know – Studies of residential carpenters found that the overall risk of nail gun injury is twice as high when using contact trigger nail guns compared to using sequential trigger nail guns.
**Note that the studies could not quantify injury risks associated with specific tasks; it is likely that some nailing tasks are more dangerous than others.*

A voluntary ANSI standard 10 calls for all large pneumatic framing nailers manufactured after 2003 to be shipped with a sequential trigger. However, these may not always be FULL SEQUENTIAL triggers. Contractors may need to contact manufacturers or suppliers to purchase a FULL SEQUENTIAL trigger kit.

Worksite Story – A carpenter apprentice on his fist day ever using a nail gun injured his right leg. He was working on a step ladder and was in the process of lowering the nail gun to his side when the gun struck his leg and fired a nail into it. He had no training prior to using the nail gun. New worker training is important and should include hands-on skills.

Six Steps to Nail Gun Safety

1. Use the full sequential trigger

The full sequential trigger is always the safest trigger mechanism for the job. It reduces the risk of unintentional nail discharge and double fires—including injuries from bumping into co-workers.

- At a minimum, provide full sequential trigger nailers for placement work where the lumber needs to be held in place by hand. Examples include building walls and nailing blocking, fastening studs to plates and blocks to studs, and installing trusses.
  - Unintended nail discharge is more likely to lead to a hand or arm injury for placement work compared to flat work, where the lumber does not need to be held in place by hand. Examples of flat work include roofing, sheathing, and subflooring.
- Consider restricting inexperienced employees to full sequential trigger nail guns starting out. Some contractors using more than one type of trigger on their jobs color-code the nail guns so that the type of trigger can be readily identified by workers and supervisors.
- Some contractors have been reluctant to use full sequential triggers fearing a loss of productivity. How do the different types of triggers compare?
  - The one available study had 10 experienced framers stick-build two identical small (8 f x 10 ft. wood structures—one using a sequential trigger nail gun and one using a contact trigger nail gun. Small structures were built in this study so that there would be time for each carpenter to complete two sheds.
  - Average nailing time using the contact trigger was 10% faster, which accounted for less than 1% of the total building time when cutting and layout was included. However, in this study the trigger type was less important to overall productivity than

who was using the tool; this suggests productivity concerns should focus on the skill of the carpenter rather than on the trigger.
    - Although the study did not evaluate framing a residence or light commercial building, it shows that productivity is not just about the trigger. The wood structures built for the study did include common types of nailing tasks (flat nailing, through nailing, toe-nailing) and allowed comparisons for both total average nailing time and overall project time. The study did not compare productivity differences for each type of nailing task used to build the sheds.

2. Provide training

Both new and experienced workers can benefit from safety training to learn about the causes of nail gun injuries and specific steps to reduce them. Be sure that training is provided in a manner that employees can understand. Here is a list of topics for training:

- How nail guns work and how triggers differ.
- Main causes of injuries – especially differences among types of triggers.
- Instructions provided in manufacturer tool manuals and where the manual is kept.

Hands-on training with the actual nailers to be used on the job. This gives each employee an opportunity to handle the nailer and to get feedback on topics such as:

- How to load the nail gun
- How to operate the air compressor
- How to fie the nail gun
- How to hold lumber during placement work
- How to recognize and approach ricochet-prone work surfaces
- How to handle awkward position work (e.g., toe-nailing and work on ladders)
- How best to handle special risks associated with contact and single actuation triggers such as nail gun recoil and double fires. For example, coach new employees on how to minimize double fires by allowing the nail gun to recoil rather than continuing to push against the gun after it fires.
- What to do when a nail gun malfunctions.

**Training should also cover items covered in the following sections of the guidance, such as company nail gun work procedures, personal protective equipment, injury reporting, and fist aid and medical treatment.*

You Should Know

- Training is important: Untrained workers are more likely to experience a nail gun injury than a trained worker.
- Training does not trump triggers: Trained workers using contact triggers still have twice the overall risk of injury as trained workers using sequential triggers.

3. Establish nail gun work procedures

Contractors should develop their own nail gun work rules and procedures to address risk factors and make the work as safe as possible. Examples of topics for contractor work procedures include but are not limited to the following Do's & Don'ts:

DO's

- Make sure that tool manuals for the nailers used on the job are always available on the jobsite.
- Make sure that manufacturers' tool labels and instructions are understood and followed.
- Check tools and power sources before operating to make sure that they are in proper working order.
- Take broken or malfunctioning nail guns out of service immediately.
- Set up operations so that workers are not in the line of fire from nail guns being operated by co-workers.
- Check lumber surfaces before nailing. Look for knots, nails, straps, hangers, etc. that could cause recoil or ricochet.
- Use a hammer or positive placement nailer when nailing metal joinery or irregular lumber.
- For placement work, keep hands at least 12 inches away from the nailing point at all times. Consider using clamps to brace instead of your hands.
- Always shoot nail guns away from your body and away from co-workers.
- Always disconnect the compressed air when:
    - Leaving a nailer unattended
    - Travelling up and down a ladder or stairs

  - Passing the nail gun to a co-worker
  - Clearing jammed nails
  - Performing any other maintenance on the nail gun
- Recognize the dangers of awkward position work and provide extra time and precautions:
  - Use a hammer if you cannot reach the work while holding the nailer with your dominant hand.
  - Use a hammer or reposition for work at face or head height. Recoil is more difficult to control and could be dangerous.
  - Use a hammer or full sequential trigger nailer when working in a tight space. Recoil is more difficult to control and double fires could occur with contact triggers.
  - Take extra care with toe-nailing.
    - Nail guns can slip before or during firing because the gun cannot be held flush against the work piece.
    - Use a nail gun with teeth on the safety contact to bite into the work piece to keep the gun from slipping during the shot.
    - Use the trigger to fire only after the safety contact piece is positioned.
- Recognize the dangers of nail gun work at height and provide extra time and precautions:
  - Set up jobs to minimize the need for nailing at height
  - Consider using scaffolds instead of ladders
  - If work must be done on ladders, use full sequential trigger nailers to prevent nail gun injuries which could occur from bumping a leg while climbing up or down a ladder.
  - Position ladders so you don't have to reach too far. Your belt buckle should stay between the side rails when reaching to the side.
  - Maintain three points of contact with the ladder at all times to prevent a fall—this means that clamps may need to be used for placement work. Holding a nailer in one hand and the work piece with the other provides only two points of contact (your feet). Reaching and recoil can make you lose your balance and fall. Falls, especially with contact trigger nailers, can result in nail gun injuries.

Don'ts

- Never bypass or disable nail gun safety features. This is strictly prohibited.
  - Tampering includes removing the spring from the safety-contact tip and/or tying down, taping or otherwise securing the trigger so it does not need to be pressed. Tampering increases the chance that the nail gun will fie unintentionally both for the current user and anyone else who may use the nail gun. Nail gun manufacturers strongly recommend against tampering and OSHA requires that tools be maintained in a safe condition.
  - There is **NO** legitimate reason to modify or disable a nail gun safety device.
- Encourage workers to keep their fingers off the trigger when holding or carrying a nail gun.
  If this is not natural, workers should use a full sequential nail gun or set down the nailer until they begin to nail again.
- Never lower the nail gun from above or drag the tool by the hose.
- If the nail-gun hose gets caught on something, don't pull on the hose. Go find the problem and release the hose.
- Never use the nailer with the non-dominant hand.

4. Provide Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

Worker using recommended PPE when working with nail guns: hard hat, safety glasses, and hearing protection. Worker by OSHA is licensed under Public Domain

Safety shoes, which help protect workers' toes from nail gun injuries, are typically required by OSHA on residential construction sites. In addition, employers should provide, at no cost to employees, the following protective equipment for workers using nail guns:

- Hard hats
- High Impact eye protection – safety glasses or goggles marked ANSI Z87.1
- Hearing protection – either earplugs or earmuff

5. Encourage reporting and discussion of injuries and close calls

Studies show that many nail gun injuries go unreported. Employers should ensure that their policies and practices encourage reporting of nail gun injuries. Reporting helps ensure that employees get medical attention. It also helps contractors to identify unrecognized job site risks that could lead to additional injuries if not addressed. Injuries and close calls provide teachable moments that can help improve crew safety.

If you have a safety incentive program, be sure that it does not discourage workers from reporting injuries. Employers that intentionally under report work-related injuries will be in violation of OSHA's injury and illness recordkeeping regulation.

6. Provide fist aid and medical treatment

Employers and workers should seek medical attention immediately after nail gun injuries, even for hand injuries that appear to be minimal. Studies suggest that 1 out of 4 nail gun hand injuries can involve some type of structural damage such as bone fracture. Materials such as nail strip glue or plastic or even clothing can get embedded in the injury and lead to infection. Barbs on the nail can cause secondary injury if the nail is removed incorrectly. These complications can be avoided by having workers seek immediate medical care.

Worksite Story – A construction worker accidentally drove a 16 penny framing nail into his thigh. It didn't bleed much and he didn't seek medical care. He removed the nail himself. Three days later he felt a snap in his leg and severe pain. In the emergency room, doctors removed a sheared piece of nail and found that his thigh bone had fractured. Not all injuries are immediately visible. Failure to seek medical care can result in complications and more serious injuries.

Other Hazards

Air Pressure

Pneumatic tools and compressor use are regulated under OSHA's Construction standard at 29 CFR 1926.302(b). The provisions in this standard that are relevant for nail guns are provided below:

1) Pneumatic power tools shall be secured to the hose or whip by some positive means to prevent the tool from becoming accidentally disconnected.

Note: An OSHA letter of interpretation allows the use of a quick disconnect with a pull-down sleeve to meet this requirement. It is composed of a male fitting (connector) and female fitting (coupling) that has a sleeve which must be pulled away from the end of the hose to separate the two fittings to prevent the tool from becoming accidentally disconnected.

3) All pneumatically driven nailers, staplers, and other similar equipment provided with automatic fastener feed, which operate at more than 100 p.s.i. pressure at the tool shall have a safety device on the muzzle to prevent the tool from ejecting fasteners, unless the muzzle is in contact with the work surface.

5) The manufacturer's safe operating pressure for hoses, pipes, valves, filters, and other fitting's shall not be exceeded.

6) The use of hoses for hoisting or lowering tools shall not be permitted.

Noise

Pneumatic nail guns produce short (less than a tenth of a second in duration) but loud "impulse" noise peaks: one from driving the nail and one from exhausting the air. Most nail gun manufacturers recommend that users wear hearing protection when operating a nailer.

Available information indicates that nail gun noise can vary depending on the gun, the work piece, air pressure, and the work setting. The type of trigger system does not appear to affect the noise level. Peak noise emission levels for several nailers ranged from 109 to 136 dBA.15,16 These loud short bursts can contribute to hearing loss. Employers should provide hearing protection in the form of earplugs or muff and ensure that they are worn correctly. Employers should also ask about noise levels when buying nail guns—studies have identified ways to reduce nail gun noise and some manufacturers may incorporate noise reduction features.

Note: OSHA's standard for exposure to continuous noise levels (29 CFR 1926.52) addresses both the noise level and the duration of exposure. In this standard, workers exposed for 15 minutes at 115 A-weighted decibels (dBA) have the same exposure as workers exposed for 8 hours at 90 dBA.

The NIOSH and OSHA limit for impulse noise is 140 decibels: above this level a single exposure can cause instant damage to the ear.

NIOSH recommends that an 8-hour exposure should not exceed 85 dBA and a one-second exposure should not exceed 130 dBA without using hearing protection. hearing protection.

Musculoskeletal disorders

Framing nail guns can weigh up to 8 pounds and many framing jobs require workers to hold and use these guns for long periods of time in awkward hand/arm postures. Holding an 8-pound weight for long periods of time can lead to musculoskeletal symptoms such as soreness or tenderness in the fingers, wrist, or forearm tendons or muscles. These symptoms can progress to pain, or in the most severe cases, inability to work. No studies have shown that one trigger type is any more or less likely to cause musculoskeletal problems from long periods of nail gun use. If use of a nail gun is causing musculoskeletal pain or symptoms of musculoskeletal disorders, medical care should be sought.

Conclusion

Nail gun injuries are painful. Some cause severe injuries or death. Nail gun injuries have been on the rise along with the increased popularity of these powerful tools. These injuries can be prevented, and more and more contractors are making changes to improve nail gun safety. Take a look at your practices and use this guide to improve safety on your job sites. Working together with tool gun manufacturers, safety and health professionals, and other organizations, we can reduce nail gun injuries.

8.4: Threaded Fasteners, Drivers, Pliers and Wrenches

Threaded Fasteners

Selecting the appropriate fastener for a particular application involves considering many factors to include: functionality, strength and durability, exposure to natural elements, and aesthetics.While most bolts and many screws are designed for the head to press firmly against flat surfaces of materials and parts, screws with tapered or bugle style heads are manufactured to be countersunk even with or below material surfaces. Screws, bolts and other threaded fastener accessories are normally made of brass; or mild, hardened or stainless steel; or plastics in some designed for lighter and cosmetic applications. In many cases, threaded fasteners are treated with processes such as galvanization, electroplated phosphate, or chemical primers such as zinc oxide.

Screws are taper tipped and threaded in a manner that helps wood, or other materials, draw together as the screw is inserted. They are used in place of nails when stronger joining power is needed. A screw makes its own thread pattern in the material. Screw head shapes (slotted, pan, hex, oval, flat) vary according to the application. Also the slots or drive types of screws are available in a wide variety (slotted, Phillips, Robertson, square, Pozidrive®, etc.).

Bolts are male threaded fasteners that require a female threaded counterpart (a **"nut"** or a threaded hole in a material) in order to secure themselves. Nuts and bolts allow for future disassembly and when used with flat and locking style washers, provide strong mechanical bonds and stability. These threaded fasteners are available in coarse and fine thread configurations which are recognized by the amount of threads per inch **(tpi)** in SAE fasteners and by pitch in metric fasteners. Cap head and stove type bolts are also rated by their hardness or shear strength. Various cast or embossed markings can be found on the head of these kinds of bolts, with each type of marking symbolizing a bolt's capacity.

Figure 8.4.1: SAE Bolt Sizes by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Figure 8.4.2 Metric Bolt Sizes by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Specialty Anchors

Specialty anchors such as eye hooks, J-hooks for drywall, masonry, tile, wood, and other materials are available in both screw and bolt designs.

Tap and Die sets can be used to thread materials to accept another fastener. **Taps** are tools made to cut female threads while **Dies** are tools designed to cut male threads on round stock materials. It is important that the drilled hole size for tapping, or the diameter of the material to be threaded with a die, be of a specific size and tolerance so that the final threaded product fits properly. Taps and dies are also individually available in each machine fastener diameter and thread count.

All of the fasteners listed above require tool to tighten when assembling projects and loosen them when disassembly is required. Drivers, pliers and wrenches facilitate the assembly of items with threaded objects such as nuts, bolts, screws, plumbing and electrical fittings and pipes. Various styles of pliers can also be used to cut, bend, pull and crimp materials and mechanical fittings. While the proper selection of tools for particular fastener or fitting will result in easier and more rapid assembly and disassembly of projects, improper tool selection may result in material, parts, and tool damage, lost time, and possible injury.

Drivers

Pliers

Pliers are primarily used to grip objects that utilize leverage. Different configurations of the jaw are also used to grip, turn, pull, crimp and sometimes cut a variety of things. Many types are commonly identified by a manufacturer brand or model name and used by workers in multiple construction trades fields (Channellock® is a registered trademark for a manufacturer that makes numerous styles of tools, however tongue and groove pliers are commonly referred to as channel-lock pliers).

Wrenches

Wrenches can be used to turn bolts, nuts, or other hard to turn items. Wrenches provide excellent leverage compared to pliers, and most are designed to fit specific sized fasteners. The choice of an appropriate wrench depends upon the torque or leverage required to perform a function or the design of a fastener. The wrong choice of a wrench for a task can cause slipping of the wrench, damage materials and parts, and result in bodily injury. As nuts, bolts, and fasteners are offered in standardized fractional (SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers) and metric (millimeter or mm.) sizes, most wrenches are designed to fit hexagonal (six-sided) or hex fasteners and mechanical fittings. Wrenches can be purchased either individually or in sets based on style or combinations of styles.

TOOL TIPS:

- *Only use bits and sockets rated for impact use with impact drivers and impact wrenches. Non-impact tools are made of materials that can crack, break, or shatter when used with impact tools.*
- Apply a penetrating oil according to manufacturer directions to rusted fasteners prior to trying to loosen them.
- “Stuck” or rusted nuts, bolts, and screws can sometimes be freed by striking them sharply on the head with a steel punch.
- Traditional fasteners turn in a clockwise direction to tighten and counter-clockwise to loosen. Fasteners of this design are also known as “right-hand” threaded fasteners.
- Specialty fasteners required for certain mechanical applications turn counter-clockwise to tighten and clockwise to loosen. These are also referred to as “left-hand” threaded fasteners.

8.5: Saws

Choices

Saws should be chosen based on the material type to be cut and the particular task being performed. Each type of saw has it's own purpose, may be available in a variety of sizes, and offer safety and convenience features which vary by manufacturer, style, and application. For example: Circular saws are used to cut a wide variety of construction materials with an appropriate blade. They are manufactured in a variety of sizes that can be selected according to the project. Simple projects with 1″ x 4″ or 1/2″ plywood material may only require a 5-3/8″ cordless trim saw, whereas beam construction could require a circular beam saw with a 21″ course toothed blade, and cement fiber plank siding installation using a 7-1/4″ circular saw with the appropriate blade.

While most stationary saw models are primarily used in the carpentry trades, most portable models are also employed in plumbing, electrical, and other construction and facility maintenance trades. As in the case of numerous hand tools and accessories, many of the saws types have become known by industry workers as common trademark, brand, or model names:

- Circular Saw- Skilsaw™ (Skilsaw Inc.)
- Reciprocating Saw- Sawzall® (Milwaukee Electric Tool Company); TigerSaw® (Porter Cable Tool Company)

Saw Blades

Blades come in various sizes and configurations. When choosing a saw for a particular cut, it is important to consider the type of material to be cut and the finish desired. Saw blades are rated in teeth per inch (t.p.i.), The lesser t.p.i., or the lower the revolutions per minute (r.p.m.), the rougher the finish of the cut will be. Always check the r.p.m. rating of both the blade and the saw to ensure they are compatible. Choosing a toothed blade or abrasive cut-off blade that is not rated for the r.p.m. rating of the saw can result in catastrophic blade failure and injury.

The thickness of the saw blade is referred to as the Kerf. This measurement is the width of the path of the cut where material will be removed. For accurate final dimensions, the kerf of the blade should always travel on the waste side of a marked line.

Additional Basic Saw Terminology

- **Rip Cut**- cut follows or goes with the grain of the material.
- **Cross cut**- cut goes across the grain of the material.
- **Push-block/Push Stick**- A hand-held device designed to push the work piece into and past cutting edges on stationary power tools.
- **Scroll action**- blade strokes perpendicular to material surface. Common to saber saws, scroll saws, and reciprocating saws.
- **Orbital action**- blade follows arcing path. Available option for saber and reciprocating saws. Aids in cutting pipe and round or circular materials.

Saw Safety

- Never disable manufacturer installed guards or safety devices.
- Always use safety glasses.
- Do not use a saw for any purpose it's features are not intended for.
- Always refer to manufacturer's operating instructions and safety procedures prior to operating any power tool.

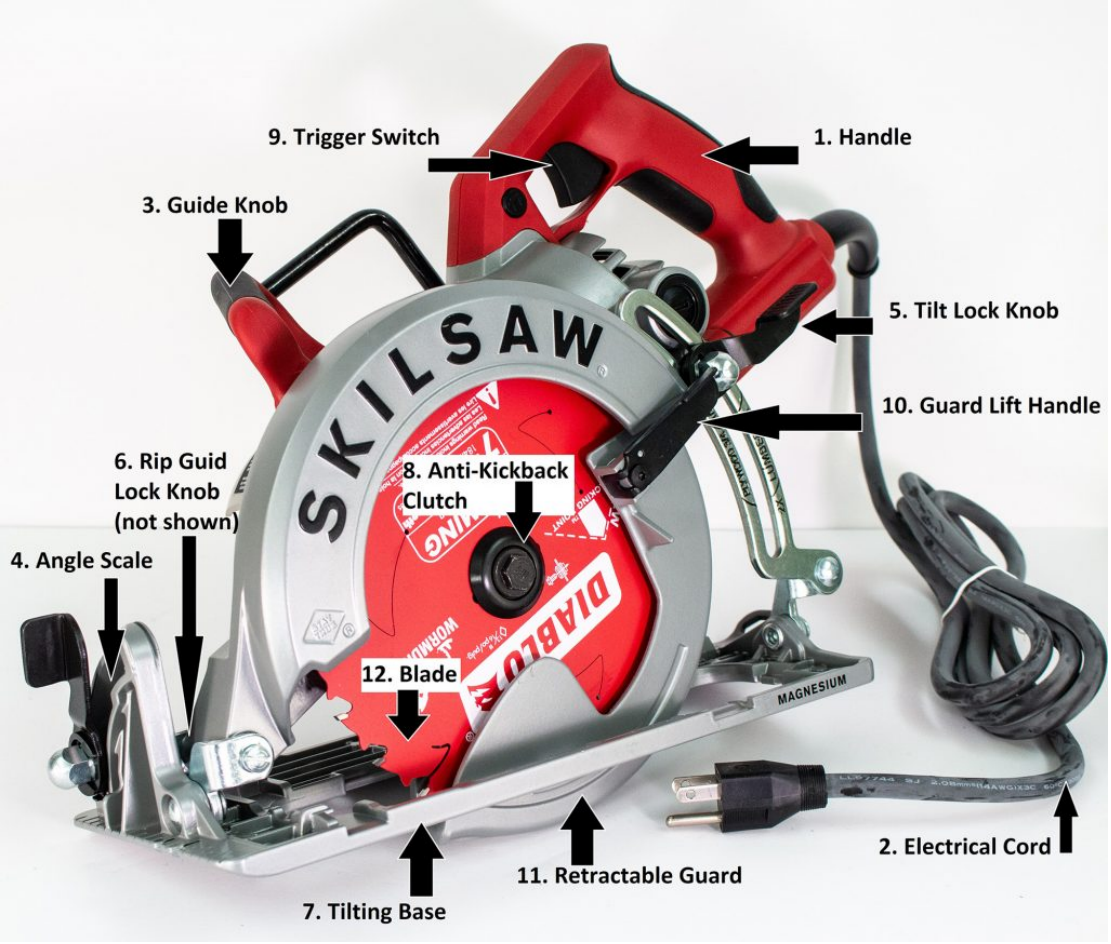
*Kickback is caused when the material binds with the blade or fence of a saw resulting in the material being forcefully ejected, often drawing the operator's hand/s toward the moving blade, creating the potential for serious injury or death. Although kickback is regularly associated with table saw use, the same potential hazard exists with circular, reciprocating, saber and any other type of saw. In addition to material being ejected and the operator being drawn toward the blade, kickback can also result in portable saws being ejected from the material toward the operator.

Saw Types and Applications

Circular Saw- portable (framing and trim)

Circular saws are used to cut a wide variety of construction materials with an appropriate blade. They are constructed in various sizes that can be selected according to the project. Simple projects with 1″ x 4″ or 1/2″ plywood material may only require a 5-3/8″

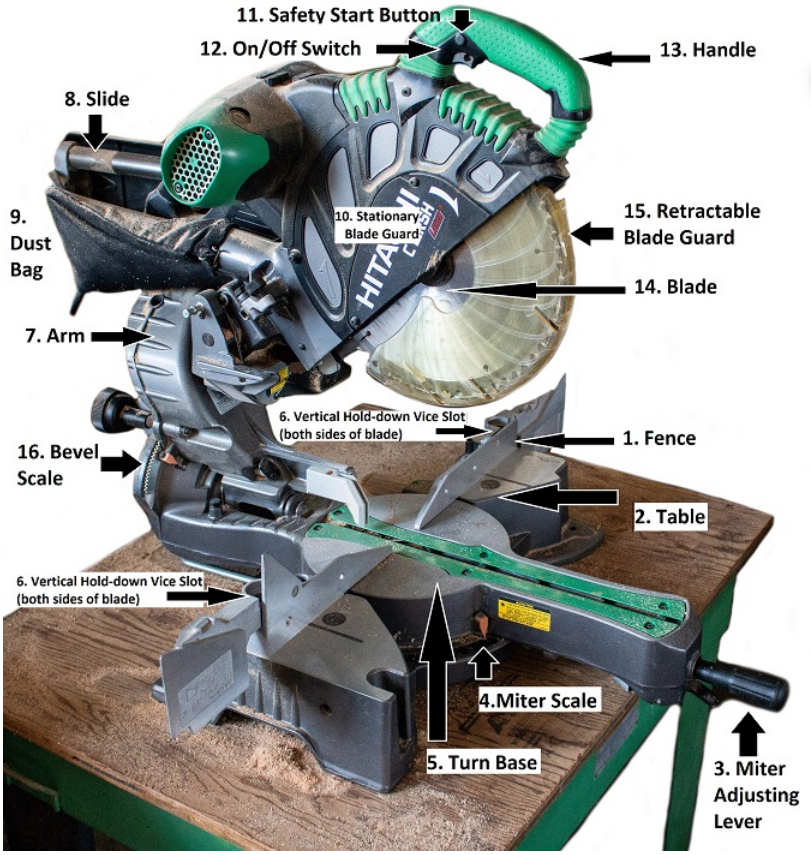
cordless trim saw, whereas beam construction could require a beam saw with a 21″ course toothed blade.



Circular Saw Parts by Gwen Arkin & Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Circular Saw Safety

Miter Saw- cuts angles, compound angles & bevels



Miter Saw Parts by Gwen Arkin & Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Miter Saw Safety

Table Saw- for rip & cross cuts of sheet goods and lumber stock

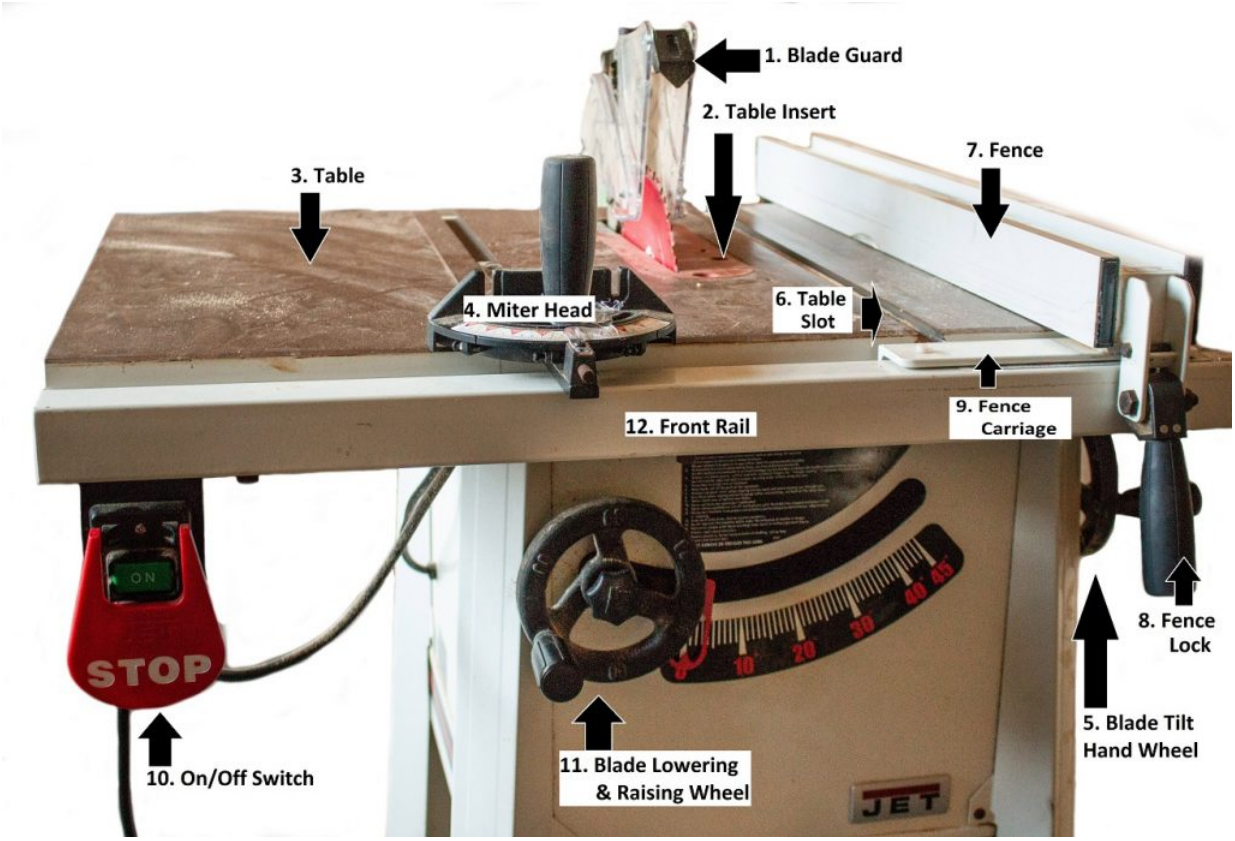


Table Saw Parts by Gwen Arkin & Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Table Saw Safety

Sabre Saws (Jigsaw) and Scroll Saws- curved cuts, uses U-shank and/or T-shank (bayonet) blades

Jigsaw by Dexter Corpuz is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Reciprocating Saw- rough cuts and demolition

Reciprocating Saw by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

**Many jigsaws & reciprocating saws can be used in either scrolling or orbital modes*

Other Saws

A variety of saws are available for masonry and mechanical applications and may be specific to a specific trade or task. Examples:

Band Saws – vertical and horizontal models for wood, metal, & other material applications

Band Saw by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Tile Saws – ceramic, porcelain, quarry, clay, and glass

Block Saws – concrete, brick, and glass

Masonry Saws – Blades used for tile, cement, brick, & asphalt are usually diamond coated or abrasive. The can also be used wet or dry.

Tile Saw by Clifford & Rosemary Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

8.6: Drills and Accessories

Drills

Drills are used to bore holes, tighten and loosen fasteners, and, with some models and accessories, mix paint, mortar, and similar materials, and to chisel and chip mortar, concrete, and other dense or hard materials. The selection of the proper dill for a job requires knowledge of the material being worked, the types and models of drills and their purposes, and the accessories that are appropriate for the task. Tool makers offer all of the types of drills in corded models and the majority of them are also available in variable speed and battery powered models that offer greater portability and reduced tool weight with lighter weight DC brushless motor technology.

Basic Drill Parts Identification

Portable Drill Parts by Gwen Arkin & Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Drill Safety

1. Wear safety glasses when operating with portable electric drill.
2. Disconnect the drill from the electrical supply when installing bits.
3. Clamp stock so it will not move during the drilling operation.
4. Before drilling, turn the drill on to see if the bit is centered and running true.
5. Align the bit with the desired hole location before turning the drill on.
6. Hold the drill firmly with both hands while drilling.
7. When drilling deep holes with a twist drill, move the bit up and down several times while drilling to remove cuttings and reduce overheating in the bit.
8. Do not allow the cord to become wrapped around the drill when working.
9. If the electrical cord becomes frayed or starts to separate from the drill housing, repair it immediately!
10. Remove the bit from the drill as soon as the work is completed.
11. Select the correct bit for the finish and material being drilled. Make sure the bit is securely tightened in the drill chuck.
12. Be extremely careful when using larger portable electric drills (3/8″ and 1/2″). If the bit should hang or get caught the drill will twist in the operator’s hands causing a sprain or bruised fingers.
13. Always remove the key from the chuck before drilling.
14. To prevent seizing, reduce the feed pressure when the drill bit is about to come through the material.

Drill Operating Procedures

1. Always center punch or make a starting indentation in the material being drilled to get an accurate starting point for the drill bit.
2. Tighten the drill bit by rotating the chuck key to all three holes in the chuck. This will help to keep the drill bit centered.
3. Apply moderate even pressure to the drill during the drilling operation. If excessive pressure is required to make the bit cut then the bit is dull and needs to be sharpened.
4. Maintain good balance at all times when drilling.

5. Use slow drill speeds for drilling metal and fast speeds for drilling wood.
6. To obtain holes that are placed accurately, drill a small pilot first then drill the final hole.

Drill Types

Bits & Accessories

Along with using the driver bits for various fasteners discussed in the previous chapter, drills can be accessorized to perform a variety of functions.

8.7: Grinders, Sanders, and Accessories

Grinders

Grinders are normally used to either smooth or cut hard surfaces and materials depending upon the type of accessory and material being used. The basic grinding tool consists of a motor with an abrasive wheel, wire brush or other attachment attached to the arbor (**shaft**) by a female threaded fastener (**arbor nut**). Some manufacturers' arbor nut configuration requires a propitiatory wrench or spanner for removal and installation of their own specially designed style of fastener. Grinders are offered in both portable and stationary models, and some come with a variable speed option. Each style of grinder can be accessorized for specific applications and functions and components differ by manufacturer.

Grinder Safety

When choosing accessories for grinders, it is extremely important to note the the revolutions per minute (**r.p.m.**) rating of the accessory meets or exceeds the r.p.m. of the grinder. An inappropriately sized grinder accessory can shatter or break resulting in injury. Grinders should always be unplugged or the battery should be disconnected from the tool before changing accessories. Portable grinders, like many other rotating power tools, have the potential for kickback and operators should take the same basic precautions as when operating a portable power saw. Bench grinders have tool rests, or tables for stabilizing items being ground. These should be adjusted as close to the grinding wheel as possible to prevent injury in the event of the wheel grabbing the item and pulling the operators hand/s in the direction of the wheel. Bench grinders are also required to have adjustable, impact resistant, clear lens guards, protective eye wear should always be worn by the operator when using any grinder. Due to the wide variety of grinding tools and applications, be sure to consult manufacturer directions before operating any power tool you are unfamiliar with. Although some of these tools are also offered in special versions that can be used in the presence of water to cool the blade or stone and flush debris from the cut or material surface, most grinders are not suited for wet applications.

Types of Grinders

Grinder Accessories

Sanding Discs for grinders usually require a hard rubber backing plate to be attached to the grinder and for the disc to be attached to the backing plate by an adhesive or hook-and-loop fastening system, to create an orbital sander. The disc's sandpaper material composition should be selected according to the material being sanded (see Sandpaper Material Composition).

Buffing Bonnets and Wheels used for buffing metals, plastics, quarry stone and other surfaces can be made of cotton, microfiber, and other materials regularly used in hand polishing items. While bonnets are mounted to backing plates on portable grinders of buffers, buffing wheels are mounted to the arbor of stationary grinders with the arbor nut.

Sanders

Regardless of whether you are sanding by hand or using a power sander, identifying the right sanding tool and sandpaper to be used for a project can be a daunting task if you're unfamiliar with the capability of the sanding tools and the variety of sandpapers available for specific applications. Sanders can be used to form and shape a wide variety of materials and to strip or create fine finishes. When working with electric power sanders, when the tool is fitted with a variable speed option, the speed should be adjusted to a speed that creates the best cutting action in order to realize the full potential of the tool and sandpaper being used based on the material being sanded and the finish desired. As with other power tools, it is important to let the tool do the work. Too much pressure on the tool can slow or dampen the machine's action, creating less cutting action due to excessive friction or not allowing the tool to rotate or vibrate at all. Some sanders rotate in one continuous motion (orbital or track) that can leave sanding lines or swirl marks in materials. Random orbital and oscillating sanders work in multiple pathways that create fewer lines and finer finishes.

Types of Sanders

Sand Paper

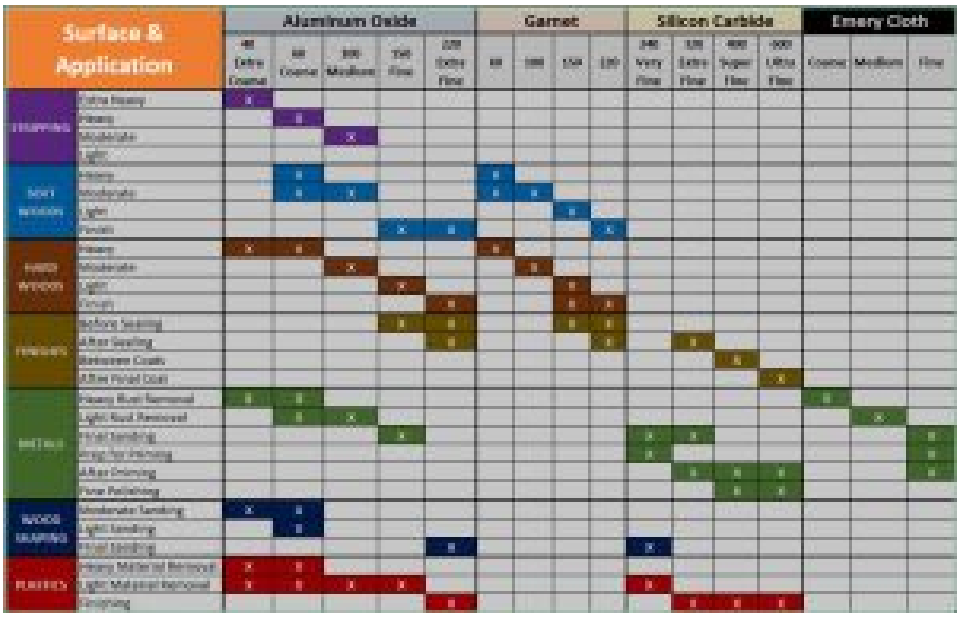
Sandpaper Rectangle by Dexter Corpuz is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Styles

Grit is the term use to identify the coarseness (roughness) of the material on the sandpaper. Sandpapers are labeled by a number denoting their coarseness: the lower the number, the coarser the grit of the sandpaper and rougher finish; the higher the number, the finer the grit and smoother finish. The sandpaper's cutting material can consist of aluminum oxide, garnet, or silicon, and can even be used in emery cloth that resist breakdown in wet applications. For sanding items that require extensive work, it is best to start with a coarse sandpaper, graduating incrementally to finer grits to obtain the desired finish.

Material Composition

- **Garnet** quarry stone is crushed to a specified grain size and used to coat paper or cloth to make sandpaper and sanding belts commonly used for universal applications. Wears out faster than other sandpapers but is capable of creating smoother finishes.
- **Aluminum Oxide** works good for sanding wood and metal. As aluminum oxide particles flake off during use creating new sharp edges, this media lasts longer than garnet sandpaper, but does not create as smooth of a finish.
- **Silicon Carbide** is harder than garnet or aluminum oxide. This media is commonly used for metal, plastics, and fiberglass, but is a poor choice for applications with wood.
- **Emery Cloth** is a cloth material coated with a granular mineral substance normally consisting of corundum mixed with magnetite or hematite. Emery cloth is capable of holding up in wet applications and is relied upon by plumbers to clean and etch copper pipes and fittings prior to soldering.



Sandpaper Selection Chart by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: Mathematics for Maintenance Techs

9.1: Required Math Concepts

Numeral System and Notation

It is often said that mathematics is the language of science. If this is true, then an essential part of the language of mathematics is numbers. The earliest use of numbers occurred 100 centuries ago in the Middle East to count, or enumerate items. Farmers, cattlemen, and tradesmen used tokens, stones, or markers to signify a single quantity—a sheaf of grain, a head of livestock, or a fixed length of cloth, for example. Doing so made commerce possible, leading to improved communications and the spread of civilization.

Three to four thousand years ago, Egyptians introduced fractions. They first used them to show reciprocals. Later, they used them to represent the amount when a quantity was divided into equal parts.

But what if there were no cattle to trade or an entire crop of grain was lost in a flood? How could someone indicate the existence of nothing? From earliest times, people had thought of a “base state” while counting and used various symbols to represent this null condition. However, it was not until about the fifth century A.D. in India that zero was added to the number system and used as a numeral in calculations.

Clearly, there was also a need for numbers to represent loss or debt. In India, in the seventh century A.D., negative numbers were used as solutions to mathematical equations and commercial debts. The opposites of the counting numbers expanded the number system even further.

Because of the evolution of the number system, we can now perform complex calculations using these and other categories of real numbers. In this section, we will explore sets of numbers, calculations with different kinds of numbers, and the use of numbers in expressions.

Numbers

Natural numbers

The numbers we use for counting, or enumerating items, are the natural numbers: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and so on. We describe them in set notation as {1,2,3,…} where the ellipsis (…) indicates that the numbers continue to infinity. The natural numbers are, of course, also called the counting numbers. Any time we enumerate the members of a team, count the coins in a collection, or tally the trees in a grove, we are using the set of natural numbers.

Whole numbers

If we add zero to the counting numbers, we get the set of whole numbers.

- Counting Numbers: 1, 2, 3, …
- Whole Numbers: 0, 1, 2, 3, …

Integers

A set of integers adds the opposites of the natural numbers to the set of whole numbers:{…,−3,−2,−1,0,1,2,3,…}. It is useful to note that the set of integers is made up of three distinct subsets: negative integers, zero, and positive integers. In this sense, the positive integers are just the natural numbers. Another way to think about it is that the natural numbers are a subset of the integers.

$$\underbrace{\ldots,-3,-2,-1,}_{\text{negative integers}}\quad\underbrace{0,}_{\text{zero}}\quad\underbrace{1,2,3,\cdots}_{\text{positive integers}}$$

Fractions

Often in life, whole amounts are not exactly what we need. A baker must use a little more than a cup of milk or part of a teaspoon of sugar. Similarly a carpenter might need less than a foot of wood and a painter might use part of a gallon of paint. These people need to use numbers which are part of a whole. These numbers are very useful both in algebra and in everyday life and they are called factions. Hence, **Fractions** are a way to represent parts of a whole. It is written $\frac{a}{b}$, where a and b are integers and $b \neq 0$. In a fraction, a is called the numerator and b is called the denominator. The denominator b represents the number of equal parts the whole has been divided into, and the numerator a represents how many parts are included. The denominator, b, cannot equal zero because division by zero is undefined.

In (Figure), the circle has been divided into three parts of equal size. Each part represents $\frac{1}{3}$ of the circle. This type of model is called a fraction circle. Other shapes, such as rectangles, can also be used to model fractions.

Doing the Manipulative Mathematics activity Model Fractions will help you develop a better understanding of fractions, their numerators and denominators.

What does the fraction $\frac{2}{3}$ represent? The fraction $\frac{2}{3}$ means two of three equal parts.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: http://pressbooks.oer.hawaii.edu/buildingmaint/?p=142

Improper and Proper Fractions

In an improper fraction, the numerator is greater than or equal to the denominator, so its value is greater than or equal to one. Fractions such as $\frac{5}{4}$, $\frac{3}{2}$, $\frac{5}{5}$, and $\frac{7}{3}$ are called improper fractions.

When a fraction has a numerator that is smaller than the denominator, it is called a proper fraction, and its value is less than one. Fractions such as $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{7}$, and $\frac{11}{13}$ are proper fractions.

Equivalent Fractions

Equivalent fractions are fractions that have the same value. For example, the fractions $\frac{0}{8}$ and $\frac{8}{8}$ have the same value, 1. Figure shows two images: a single pizza on the left, cut into two equal pieces, and a second pizza of the same size, cut into eight pieces on the right. This is a way to show that $\frac{1}{2}$is equivalent to $\frac{4}{8}$. In other words, they are equivalent fractions.

Figure #. Since the same amount is of each pizza is shaded, we see that $\frac{1}{2}$ is equivalent to $\frac{4}{8}$.

Add or Subtract Fractions

To add or subtract fractions, they must have a common denominator. If the factions have the same denominator, we just add the numerators and place the sum over the common denominator. If the fractions have different denominators, what do we need to do?

First, we will use fraction tiles to model finding the common denominator of $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$.

We'll start with one $\frac{1}{2}$ tile and $\frac{1}{3}$ tile. We want to find a common fraction tile that we can use to match *both* $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$ exactly.

If we try the $\frac{1}{4}$ pieces, 2 of them exactly match the $\frac{1}{2}$ piece, but they do not exactly match the $\frac{1}{3}$ piece.

If we try the $\frac{1}{5}$ pieces, they do not exactly cover the $\frac{1}{2}$ piece or the $\frac{1}{3}$ piece.

If we try the $\frac{1}{6}$ pieces, we see that exactly 3 of them cover the $\frac{1}{2}$ piece, and exactly 2 of them cover the $\frac{1}{3}$ piece.

If we were to try the $\frac{1}{12}$ pieces, they would also work.

Even smaller tiles, such as $\frac{1}{24}$ and $\frac{1}{48}$, would also exactly cover the $\frac{1}{2}$ piece and the $\frac{1}{3}$ piece.

The denominator of the largest piece that covers both fractions is the least common denominator (LCD) of the two fractions. So, the least common denominator of $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$ is 6.

Notice that all of the tiles that cover $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$ have something in common: Their denominators are common multiples of 2 and 3, the denominators of $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$. The least common multiple (LCM) of the denominators is 6, and so we say that 6 is the least common denominator (LCD) of the fractions $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$. Therefore, the least common denominator (LCD) of two fractions is the least common multiple (LCM) of their denominators.

To find the LCD of two fractions, we will find the LCM of their denominators. We follow the procedure we used earlier to find the LCM of two numbers. We only use the denominators of the fractions, not the numerators, when finding the LCD.

Example 9.1.1

Find the LCD for the fractions $\frac{7}{12}$ and $\frac{5}{18}$.

Solution

Factor each denominator into its primes.	
List the primes of 12 and the primes of 18 lining them up in columns when possible.	$12 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3$ $18 = 2 \cdot \quad 3 \cdot 3$
Bring down the columns.	$12 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3$ $18 = 2 \cdot \quad 3 \cdot 3$ $\text{LCM} = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 3$
Multiply the factors. The product is the LCM.	$\text{LCM} = 36$
The LCM of 12 and 18 is 36, so the LCD of $\frac{7}{12}$ and $\frac{5}{18}$ is 36.	LCD of $\frac{7}{12}$ and $\frac{5}{18}$ is 36.

Fractions addition and subtraction trick – do them the fast way!

Multiply Fractions

When we multiplied fractions, we just multiplied the numerators and multiplied the denominators right straight across.

A model may help you understand multiplication of fractions. We will use fraction tiles to model To multiply and think of

Start with fraction tiles for three-fourths. To find one-half of three-fourths, we need to divide them into two equal groups. Since we cannot divide the three tiles evenly into two parts, we exchange them for smaller tiles.

We see is equivalent to Taking half of the six tiles gives us three tiles, which is

Therefore,

When multiplying fractions, the properties of positive and negative numbers still apply. It is a good idea to determine the sign of the product as the first step. In Example 9.1.2 we will multiply two negatives, so the product will be positive.

Example 9.1.2

Multiply, and write the answer in simplified form:

Solution

Add example text here.

The signs are the same, so the product is positive. Multiply the numerators, multiply the denominators.	
Simplify.	
Look for common factors in the numerator and denominator. Rewrite showing common factors.	
Remove common factors.	=

Another way to find this product involves removing common factors earlier.

Determine the sign of the product. Multiply.	
Show common factors and then remove them.	
Multiply remaining factors.	

We get the same result.

Multiplying two fractions: Example

Divide Fractions

Now that we know how to multiply fractions, we are almost ready to divide. Before we can do that, that we need some vocabulary.

The reciprocal of a fraction is found by inverting the fraction, placing the numerator in the denominator and the denominator in the numerator. The reciprocal of is .

Notice that · = 1. A number and its reciprocal multiply to 1.

To get a product of positive 1 when multiplying two numbers, the numbers must have the same sign. So reciprocals must have the same sign.

The reciprocal of − is − , since −) = 1 .

Dividing Fractions: Example

Decimals

You probably already know quite a bit about decimals based on your experience with money. Suppose you buy a sandwich and a bottle of water for lunch. If the sandwich costs , the bottle of water costs , and the total sales tax is , what is the total cost

of your lunch?

The total is Suppose you pay with a bill and pennies. Should you wait for change? No, and pennies is the same as

Because each penny is worth of a dollar. We write the value of one penny as since

Decimals are in fact another way of writing fractions whose denominators are powers of 10.

Just as the counting numbers are based on powers of ten, decimals are based on powers of ten. **Table 1** shows the counting numbers.

Table 1

Counting number	Name
	One
	Ten
	One hundred
	One thousand
	Ten thousand

How are decimals related to fractions? **Table 2** shows the relation.

Table 2

Decimal	Fraction	Name
		One tenth
		One hundredth
		One thousandth
		One ten-thousandth

Add and Subtract Decimals

Let's take one more look at the lunch order from the start of Decimals, this time noticing how the numbers were added together.

All three items (sandwich, water, tax) were priced in dollars and cents, so we lined up the dollars under the dollars and the cents under the cents, with the decimal points lined up between them. Then we just added each column, as if we were adding whole numbers. By lining up decimals this way, we can add or subtract the corresponding place values just as we did with whole numbers.

Add or subtract decimals.

1. Write the numbers vertically so the decimal points line up.
2. Use zeros as place holders, as needed.
3. Add or subtract the numbers as if they were whole numbers. Then place the decimal in the answer under the decimal points in the given numbers.

Multiply Decimals

Multiplying decimals is very much like multiplying whole numbers—we just have to determine where to place the decimal point. The procedure for multiplying decimals will make sense if we first review multiplying fractions.

Do you remember how to multiply fractions? To multiply fractions, you multiply the numerators and then multiply the denominators.

So let's see what we would get as the product of decimals by converting them to fractions first. We will do two examples side-by-side in **Table 3**. Look for a pattern.

Table 3

	A	B
Convert to fractions.		
Multiply.		
Convert back to decimals.		

There is a pattern that we can use. In A, we multiplied two numbers that each had one decimal place, and the product had two decimal places. In B, we multiplied a number with one decimal place by a number with two decimal places, and the product had three decimal places.

How many decimal places would you expect for the product of If you said "five", you recognized the pattern. When we multiply two numbers with decimals, we count all the decimal places in the factors—in this case two plus three—to get the number of decimal places in the product—in this case five.

Once we know how to determine the number of digits after the decimal point, we can multiply decimal numbers without converting them to fractions first. The number of decimal places in the product is the sum of the number of decimal places in the factors.

The rules for multiplying positive and negative numbers apply to decimals, too, of course.

When multiplying two numbers,

- if their signs are the same, the product is positive.
- if their signs are different, the product is negative.

When you multiply signed decimals, first determine the sign of the product and then multiply as if the numbers were both positive. Finally, write the product with the appropriate sign.

Multiply decimal numbers

1. Determine the sign of the product.
2. Write the numbers in vertical format, lining up the numbers on the right.
3. Multiply the numbers as if they were whole numbers, temporarily ignoring the decimal points.
4. Place the decimal point. The number of decimal places in the product is the sum of the number of decimal places in the factors. If needed, use zeros as placeholders.
5. Write the product with the appropriate sign.

Multiplying Decimals: Example

Multiply by Powers of 10

In many fields, especially in the sciences, it is common to multiply decimals by powers of Let's see what happens when we multiply by some powers of

Look at the results without the final zeros. Do you notice a pattern?

The number of places that the decimal point moved is the same as the number of zeros in the power of ten. **Table 4** summarizes the results.

Table 4

Multiply by	Number of zeros	Number of places decimal point moves
		place to the right
		places to the right
		places to the right
		places to the right

We can use this pattern as a shortcut to multiply by powers of ten instead of multiplying using the vertical format. We can count the zeros in the power of and then move the decimal point that same of places to the right.

So, for example, to multiply by move the decimal point places to the right.

Sometimes when we need to move the decimal point, there are not enough decimal places. In that case, we use zeros as placeholders. For example, let's multiply by We need to move the decimal point places to the right. Since there is only one digit to the right of the decimal point, we must write a in the hundredths place.

Multiply a decimal by a power of 10.

1. Move the decimal point to the right the same number of places as the number of zeros in the power of
2. Write zeros at the end of the number as placeholders if needed.

Divide Decimals

Just as with multiplication, division of decimals is very much like dividing whole numbers. We just have to figure out where the decimal point must be placed.

To understand decimal division, let's consider the multiplication problem

Remember, a multiplication problem can be rephrased as a division problem. So we can write

We can think of this as "If we divide 8 tenths into four groups, how many are in each group?". The figure below shows that there are four groups of two-tenths in eight-tenths. So

Using long division notation, we would write

Notice that the decimal point in the quotient is directly above the decimal point in the dividend.

To divide a decimal by a whole number, we place the decimal point in the quotient above the decimal point in the dividend and then divide as usual. Sometimes we need to use extra zeros at the end of the dividend to keep dividing until there is no remainder.

Divide a decimal by a whole number.

1. Write as long division, placing the decimal point in the quotient above the decimal point in the dividend.
2. Divide as usual.

Divide a Decimal by Another Decimal

So far, we have divided a decimal by a whole number. What happens when we divide a decimal by another decimal? Let's look at the same multiplication problem we looked at earlier, but in a different way.

Remember, again, that a multiplication problem can be rephrased as a division problem. This time we ask, "How many times does go into Because we can say that goes into four times. This means that divided by is

We would get the same answer, if we divide by both whole numbers. Why is this so? Let's think about the division problem as a fraction.

We multiplied the numerator and denominator by and ended up just dividing by To divide decimals, we multiply both the numerator and denominator by the same power of to make the denominator a whole number. Because of the Equivalent Fractions Property, we haven't changed the value of the fraction. The effect is to move the decimal points in the numerator and denominator the same number of places to the right.

We use the rules for dividing positive and negative numbers with decimals, too. When dividing signed decimals, first determine the sign of the quotient and then divide as if the numbers were both positive. Finally, write the quotient with the appropriate sign.

It may help to review the vocabulary for division:

Divide decimal numbers.

1. Determine the sign of the quotient.
2. Make the divisor a whole number by moving the decimal point all the way to the right. Move the decimal point in the dividend the same number of places to the right, writing zeros as needed.
3. Divide. Place the decimal point in the quotient above the decimal point in the dividend.
4. Write the quotient with the appropriate sign.

Dividing Decimals – Example

Exponents

An exponent indicates repeated multiplication of the same quantity. For example, 24 means to multiply four factors of 2, so 24 means 2·2·2·2. This format is known as exponential notation.

Exponential Notation

This is read a to the mth power.

In the expression am, the exponent tells us how many times we use the base a as a factor.

Square

Do you know why we use the word *square*? If we construct a square with three tiles on each side, the total number of tiles would be nine.

This is why we say that the square of three is nine.

$3^2 = 9$

What happens when you square a negative number?

$(-8)^2 = (-8)\ (-8) = 64$

When we multiply two negative numbers, the product is always positive. So the square of a negative number is always positive.

Cube

Square Roots

Sometimes we will need to look at the relationship between numbers and their squares in reverse. Because $10^2=100$, we say 100 is the square of 10. We can also say that 10 is a square root of 100.

Square Root of a Number

A number whose square is m is called a square root of m.

If $n^2=m$, then n is a square root of m.

Notice $(-10)^2=100$ also, so -10 is also a square root of 100. Therefore, both 10 and -10 are square roots of 100.

So, every positive number has two square roots: one positive and one negative.

What if we only want the positive square root of a positive number? The *radical sign*, $\sqrt{}$, stands for the positive square root. The positive square root is also called the principal square root.

Square Root Notation

$\sqrt{m}$ is read as "the square root of m.

If $m=n^2$, then $m = n$ for $n\geq 0$. If $m = n^2$, then $m= n$ for $n\geq 0$.

We can also use the radical sign for the square root of zero. Because $0^2=0$, $\sqrt{0}=0$. Notice that zero has only one square root.

Square Root of a Negative Number

Can we simplify $\sqrt{-25}$? Is there a number whose square is -25?

$()^2 = -25$?

None of the numbers that we have dealt with so far have a square that is -25. Why? Any positive number squared is positive, and any negative number squared is also positive. There is no real number equal to -25. If we are asked to find the square root of any negative number, we say that the solution is not a real number.

Estimate Square Roots (done)

So far we have only worked with square roots of perfect squares. The square roots of other numbers are not whole numbers.

We might conclude that the square roots of numbers between 4 and 9 will be between 2 and 3, and they will not be whole numbers. Based on the pattern in the table above, we could say that $\sqrt{5}$ is between 2 and 3. Using inequality symbols, we write $2<\sqrt{5}<3$

Approximate Square Roots with a Calculator

There are mathematical methods to approximate square roots, but it is much more convenient to use a calculator to find square roots. Find the $\sqrt{}$ or $\sqrt{x}$ key on your calculator. You will to use this key to approximate square roots. When you use your calculator to find the square root of a number that is not a perfect square, the answer that you see is not the exact number. It is an approximation, to the number of digits shown on your calculator's display. The symbol for an approximation is $\approx$ and it is read *approximately*.

Suppose your calculator has a 10-digit display. Using it to find [illegible]quare root of 5 will give 2.236067977. This is the approximate square root of 5. When we report the answer, we should use th[illegible]roximately equal to" sign instead of an equal sign.

$\sqrt{5} \approx 2.2360679785$

You will seldom use this many digits for applications in algebra. So, if you wanted to round $\sqrt{5}$ to two decimal places, you would write

$\sqrt{5}\approx 2.24$

How do we know these values are approximations and not the exact values? Look at what happens when we square them.

$2.236067978^2 = 5.000000002$

$2.24^2 = 5.0176$

The squares are close, but not exactly equal, to 5.

Introduction to Exponents

Ratios

When you apply for a mortgage, the loan officer will compare your total debt to your total income to decide if you qualify for the loan. This comparison is called the debt-to-income ratio. A ratio compares two quantities that are measured with the same unit. If we compare and , the ratio is written as

Ratios Involving Decimals

We will often work with ratios of decimals, especially when we have ratios involving money. In these cases, we can eliminate the decimals by using the Equivalent Fractions Property to convert the ratio to a fraction with whole numbers in the numerator and denominator.

For example, consider the ratio We can write it as a fraction with decimals and then multiply the numerator and denominator by to eliminate the decimals.

Do you see a shortcut to find the equivalent fraction? Notice that and The least common denominator of and is By multiplying the numerator and denominator of by we 'moved' the decimal two places to the right to get the equivalent fraction with no decimals. Now that we understand the math behind the process, we can find the fraction with no decimals like this:

"Move" the decimal 2 places.	
Simplify.	

You do not have to write out every step when you multiply the numerator and denominator by powers of ten. As long as you move both decimal places the same number of places, the ratio will remain the same.

Perimeter, Area, and Volume

Perimeter and Area

The **perimeter** is a measure of the distance around a figure. The area is a measure of the surface covered by a figure.

Square

The figure below shows a square tile that is 1 inch on each side. If an ant walked around the edge of the tile, it would walk 4 inches. This distance is the perimeter of the tile. Since the tile is a square that is 1 inch on each side, its area is one square inch. The area of a shape is measured by determining how many square units cover the shape.

Figure #. Perimeter = 4 inches Area = 1 square inch

When the ant walks completely around the tile on its edge, it is tracing the perimeter of the tile. The area of the tile is 1 square inch.

Rectangle

A rectangle has four sides and four right angles. The opposite sides of a rectangle are the same length. We refer to one side of the rectangle as the length, L, and the adjacent side as the width, W. See figure below.

A rectangle has four sides, and four right angles. The sides are labeled L for length and W for width.

The perimeter, P, of the rectangle is the distance around the rectangle. If you started at one corner and walked around the rectangle, you would walk L+W+L+W units, or two lengths and two widths. The perimeter then is

$$P=L+W+L+W$$

or

$$P=2L+2W$$

What about the area of a rectangle? Remember the rectangular rug from the beginning of this section. It was 2 feet long by 3 feet wide, and its area was 6 square feet. See Figure below. Since $A=2\cdot3$, we see that the area, A, is the length, L, times the width, W, so the area of a rectangle is $A=L\cdot W$.

The area of this rectangular rug is 6 square feet, its length times its width.

Triangle

We now know how to find the area of a rectangle. We can use this fact to help us visualize the formula for the area of a triangle. In the rectangle in the figure below, we've labeled the length b and the width h, so it's area is bh.

The area of a rectangle is the base, b, times the height, h.

We can divide this rectangle into two congruent triangles (s ure below). Triangles that are congruent have identical side lengths and angles, and so their areas are equal. The area of each triangle is one-half the area of the rectangle, or bh. This example helps us see why the formula for the area of a triangle is A= bh.

A rectangle can be divided into two triangles of equal area. The area of each triangle is one-half the area of the rectangle.

The formula for the area of a triangle is A = bh, where b is the base and h is the height.

To find the area of the triangle, you need to know its base and height. The base is the length of one side of the triangle, usually the side at the bottom. The height is the length of the line that connects the base to the opposite vertex, and makes a 90° angle with the base. The figure below shows three triangles with the base and height of each marked.

The height h of a triangle is the length of a line segment that connects the the base to the opposite vertex and makes a 90° angle with the base.

Isosceles and Equilateral Triangles

Besides the right triangle, some other triangles have special names. A triangle with two sides of equal length is called an isosceles triangle. A triangle that has three sides of equal length is called an equilateral triangle. The figure below shows both types of

triangles.

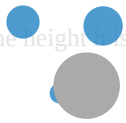
In an isosceles triangle, two sides have the same length, and the third side is the base. In an equilateral triangle, all three sides have the same length.

Isosceles and Equilateral Triangles

- An **isosceles** triangle has two sides the same length.
- An **equilateral** triangle has three sides of equal length.

Trapezoid

A trapezoid is four-sided figure, a *quadrilateral*, with two sides that are parallel and two sides that are not. The parallel sides are called the bases. We call the length of the smaller base b, and the length of the bigger base B. The height, h, of a trapezoid is the distance between the two bases as shown in the figure below.



A trapezoid has a larger base, B, and a smaller base, b. The height is the distance between the bases.

The formula for the area of a trapezoid is:

$\text{Area}_{\text{trapezoid}}=1/2h(b+B)$

Splitting the trapezoid into two triangles may help us understand the formula. The area of the trapezoid is the sum of the areas of the two triangles. See figure below.

Splitting a trapezoid into two triangles may help you understand the formula for its area.

The height of the trapezoid is also the height of each of the two triangles. See figure below.

The formula for the area of a trapezoid is

If we distribute, we get,

Circle

The properties of circles have been studied for over years. All circles have exactly the same shape, but their sizes are affected by the length of the radius, a line segment from the center to any point on the circle. A line segment that passes through a circle's center connecting two points on the circle is called a diameter. The diameter is twice as long as the radius. See figure below.

The size of a circle can be measured in two ways. The distance around a circle is called its circumference.

Archimedes discovered that for circles of all different sizes, dividing the circumference by the diameter always gives the same number. The value of this number is pi, symbolized by Greek letter (pronounced pie). However, the exact value of cannot be calculated since the decimal never ends or repeats (we will learn more about numbers like this in The Properties of Real Numbers.)

If we want the exact circumference or area of a circle, we leave the symbol in the answer. We can get an approximate answer by substituting as the value of We use the symbol to show that the result is approximate, not exact.

Properties of Circles

Since the diameter is twice the radius, another way to find the circumference is to use the formula

Suppose we want to find the exact area of a circle of radius inches. To calculate the area, we would evaluate the formula for the area when inches and leave the answer in terms of

We write after the So the exact value of the area is square inches.

To approximate the area, we would substitute

Remember to use square units, such as square inches, when you calculate the area.

Sphere

A sphere is the shape of a basketball, like a three-dimensional circle. Just like a circle, the size of a sphere is determined by its radius, which is the distance from the center of the sphere to any point on its surface. The formulas for the volume and surface area of a sphere are given below.

Showing where these formulas come from, like we did for a rectangular solid, is beyond the scope of this course. We will approximate π with 3.14.

Volume and Surface Area of a Sphere

For a sphere with radius r:

Cube or Rectangle

A cube is a rectangular solid whose length, width, and height are equal. See Volume and Surface Area of a Cube, below. Substituting, *s* for the length, width and height into the formulas for volume and surface area of a rectangular solid, we get:

$V=LWH$ $S=2LH+2LW+2WH$

$V=s\cdot s\cdot s$ $S=2s\cdot s+2s\cdot s+2s\cdot s$

$V=s^3$ $S=2s^2+2s^2+2s^2$

$S=6s^2$

So for a cube, the formulas for volume and surface area are $V=s^3$ and $S=6s^2$.

Volume and Surface Area of a Cube

For any cube with sides of length s,

Cylinder

If you have ever seen a can of soda, you know what a cylinder looks like. A cylinder is a solid figure with two parallel circles of the same size at the top and bottom. The top and bottom of a cylinder are called the bases. The height h of a cylinder is the distance between the two bases. For all the cylinders we will work with here, the sides and the height, h, will be perpendicular to the bases.

Figure #. A cylinder has two circular bases of equal size. The height is the distance between the bases.

Rectangular solids and cylinders are somewhat similar because they both have two bases and a height. The formula for the volume of a rectangular solid, $V=Bh$, can also be used to find the volume of a cylinder.

For the rectangular solid, the area of the base, B, is the area of the rectangular base, length × width. For a cylinder, the area of the base, B, is the area of its circular base, πr^2. The figure below compares how the formula $V=Bh$ is used for rectangular solids and cylinders.

Seeing how a cylinder is similar to a rectangular solid may make it easier to understand the formula for the volume of a cylinder.

To understand the formula for the surface area of a cylinder, think of a can of vegetables. It has three surfaces: the top, the bottom, and the piece that forms the sides of the can. If you carefully cut the label off the side of the can and unroll it, you will see that it is a rectangle. See figure below.

By cutting and unrolling the label of a can of vegetables, we can see that the surface of a cylinder is a rectangle. The length of the rectangle is the circumference of the cylinder's base, and the width is the height of the cylinder.

The distance around the edge of the can is the circumference of the cylinder's base it is also the length L of the rectangular label. The height of the cylinder is the width W of the rectangular label. So the area of the label can be represented as

To find the total surface area of the cylinder, we add the areas of the two circles to the area of the rectangle.

The surface area of a cylinder with radius r and height h, is $S=2\pi r^2+2\pi rh$

Volume and Surface Area of a Cylinder

For a cylinder with radius r and height h:

Cone

The first image that many of us have when we hear the word 'cone' is an ice cream cone. There are many other applications of cones (but most are not as tasty as ice cream cones). In this section, we will see how to find the volume of a cone.

In geometry, a cone is a solid figure with one circular base and a vertex. The height of a cone is the distance between its base and the vertex.The cones that we will look at in this section will always have the height perpendicular to the base. See figure below.

The height of a cone is the distance between its base and the vertex.

Earlier in this section, we saw that the volume of a cylinder is $V=\pi r^2h$. We can think of a cone as part of a cylinder. The figure below shows a cone placed inside a cylinder with the same height and same base. If we compare the volume of the cone and the cylinder, we can see that the volume of the cone is less than that of the cylinder.

The volume of a cone is less than the volume of a cylinder with the same base and height.

In fact, the volume of a cone is exactly one-third of the volume of a cylinder with the same base and height. The volume of a cone is

Since the base of a cone is a circle, we can substitute the formula of area of a circle, πr^2 , for B *to get the formula for volume of a cone*.

Volume of a Cone

For a cone with radius r and height h.

Weights and Measures Conversion Tables

Liquid Measure
8 ounces = 1 cup
2 cups= 1 pint
16 ounces= 1 pint
4 cups= 1 quart
2 pints= 1 quart
4 quarts= 1 gallon
3 teaspoons= 1 tablespoon
2 tablespoons= 1/8 cup or 1 fluid ounce
4 tablespoons= 1/4 cup
8 tablespoons= 1/2 cup
1 teaspoon= 60 drops

Conversion of US Liquid Measures to Metric System
1 fluid ounce= 29.573 milliliters
1 cup= 230 milliliters

1 quart= .94635 liters
.033814 fluid ounce= 1 milliliter
3.3814 fluid ounces= 1 deciliter
33.814 fluid ounces or 1.0567 quarts= 1 liter

Dry Measure
2 pints= 1 quart
4 quarts= 1 gallon
8 quarts= 2 gallons or 1 peck
4 pecks= 8 gallons or 1 bushel
16 ounces= 1 pound
2000 pounds= 1 ton

Conversion of US Weight and Mass to Metric System
.0353 ounces= 1 gram
1/4 ounce= 7 grams
1 ounce= 28.35 grams
4 ounces= 113.4 grams
8 ounces= 226.8 grams
1 pound= 454 grams
2.2046 pounds= 1 kilogram
1.1023 short tons= 1 metric ton

Linear Measure
12 inches= 1 foot
3 feet= 1 yard
5.5 yards= 1 rod
40 rods= 1 furlong
8 furlongs (5280 feet)= 1 mile
6080 feet= 1 nautical mile

Conversion of US Linear Measures to Metric System

1 inch= 2.54 centimeters
1 foot= .3048 meters
1 yard= .9144 meters
1 mile= 1609.3 meters or 1.6093 kilometers
.03937 inches= 1 millimeter
.3937 inches= 1 centimeter
3.937 inches= 1 decimeter
39.37 inches= 1 meter
3280.8 feet or .62137 miles= 1 kilometer

Temperature

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade: Subtract 32, Multiply by 5, then Divide by 9
To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit: Multiply by 9, Divide by 5, then Add 32

9.2: Ohm’s Law, Joules Law, and Series

This page was auto-generated because a user created a sub-page to this page.

9.2.1: Ohm’s Law, Joules Law, and Series/Parallel Formulas

(unable to fetch text document from uri [status: 404 (NotFound)])

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Electrical and Large Equipment

SECTION OVERVIEW

10.1: Electrical Systems

10.1.1: Electrical Safety

Electrical Safety Considerations

Electrical Shock

Electricity flows along a circuit that consists of a power source, a load, and conductors. The human body can become a conductor and a part of the electric circuit which can result in electrical shock. Exposure to electrical energy may result in no injury at all or may result in physical and/or neurological damage or death. An minor electrical shock may cause muscle pain and may trigger mild muscle contractions or startle people, causing a fall. However, high resistance contact may cause dielectric breakdown at the skin, lowering skin resistance, causing surface damage, but more often tissues deeper underneath the skin have been severely damaged. Electric shocks can paralyze the respiratory system or disrupt heart action, causing instant death.

The outcome of an electrical shock depends on several factors that are determined by the relationship between current, voltage, and resistance, also known as Ohm's Law.

Ohm's Law

Voltage or Electrical Force (V)
Amperage or Current Flow (I)
Resistance or Ohms (Ω or R)

Current=Electrical Force/Resistance or I=V/R

Exposure Conditions play an important role in the extent of injuries sustained as a result of electric shock. These factors include:

- **Duration**- The longer a human body remains part of an electrical circuit, more tissue and neurological damage can occur.
- **Pathway**- Electricity is always seeking the path of least resistance to ground. If both hands of a person are part of the pathway, the current has more potential to affect the heart resulting in ventricular fibrillation. If the current chooses another path such as hand-to-foot, tissue and internal organ damage still may occur.
- **Humidity/Saturation**- Electricity can easily flow through water or moisture in the air. Humidity also can effect how much a body sweats, which can lower a persons resistance to electrical current.
- **Skin Condition**- The human body's resistance to current is affected moisture content:
  - Dry Skin- 100,000 to 500,000 ohms of resistance
  - Perspiring (sweaty hands)- 1000 ohms of resistance
  - In Water (completely wet)- 150 ohms of resistance

Amperage Kills

Current	Effect
<1 Milliampere	No sensation
1 Milliampere	Tingling sensation
5 Milliamperes	Slight shock felt
6 to 30 Milliamperes	Definite shock Could cause muscle contraction causing you to hang on
50 to 100 Milliamperes	Painful shock Breathing can stop Severe muscle contractions Possible death
1000 to 4300 Milliamperes	Ventricular fibrillation Respiratory paralysis Possible death

Current	Effect
10,000 Milliamperes	Cardiac arrest Severe burns Probable death

Example:
A worker is using a faulty 120 volt tool on a hot and humid day and is sweating heavily. The worker's body resistance is approximately 1,000 ohms.
Using Ohm's law:
• Current = 120 volts / 1,000 ohms.
• Current = 0.12 amps or 120 mA.
According to the above table, this amount of current will cause a painful shock, the workers's breathing may stop, there will be severe muscle contractions, and death is possible.

Arc Flash and Arc Blast

Arc-Flash-Arc- Flash burn can occur when an electrical equipment malfunction causes an extremely high temperature area around the arc that can reach as high as 35,000 degrees Fahrenheit. Electrical burn can also occur any time an electrical current flows through bone or tissue.

Arc-Blast- When an arc occurs, a blast causes molten metal to be thrown through the air and onto the skin or into the eyes. The speed of the molten metal in an arc-blast is estimated at approximately 700 mph.

Donnie's Accident Story

Lockout-Tagout

Lock Out & Tag Out Code Book by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Lockout-tagout is a safety procedure used in industry settings to ensure that dangerous machines and circuitry are properly shut off and not started up again prior to the completion of maintenance or service work. It requires that hazardous power sources be "isolated and rendered inoperative" before any repair procedure is started. "Lock and tag" works in conjunction with a lock securing the device or the power source with the hasp, and placing it in such a position that no hazardous power sources can be turned on. The procedure requires that a tag be affixed to the locked device indicating that it should not be turned on.

When two or more subcontractors are working on different parts of a larger overall system, the locked-out device is first secured with a folding scissor-like clamp that has many padlock holes to hold it closed. Each subcontractor secures their own padlock to the clamp. The locked-out device cannot be activated until all workers have signed off on their portion of the project and removed their padlock from the clamp. A lock selected by color, shape or size (e.g. red padlock) is used to designate a standard safety device, locking and securing hazardous energy. No two keys or locks should ever be the same. A person's lock and tag must not be removed by anyone other than the individual who installed the lock and tag unless removal is accomplished under the direction of the employer.

- Identify the energy source(s)
- Isolate the energy source(s)
- Lock and Tag the energy source(s)
- No keys alike
- May only be removed by the installer
- Prove that the equipment isolation is effective

Electrical Systems and Testing Terminology

- **Continuity**- presence of a complete path for current to flow.
- **Resistor**- implements electrical resistance as a circuit element. In electrical circuits, resistors are used to reduce current flow, adjust signal levels, and to divide voltages.
  - Fixed value- have a single value of resistance.
  - Potentiometer- provides variable resistance by adjustment.
- **Open Circuit**- has intended interrupted path.
- **Closed Circuit**- has a complete path.
- **Short Circuit**- unintended path between two conductors.
- **Ground Fault**- unintended path to ground.
- **Arc Fault**- Normal when motor brushes spark and at receptacles when plugging in appliances and equipment that are in the "on" position.
  - Series- conductor is series with load is unintentionally broken.
  - Parallel- caused by short circuit or ground fault.

General Safety Rules for Electrical Maintenance Technicians

- Safety glasses, goggles, or face shields must be worn any time a hazard exists that can cause foreign objects to get in your eyes from the front or the sides.
- Head protection must be worn whenever there is a potential for objects to fall from above, for bumps to your head from objects fastened in place, or for accidental contact with electrical hazards.
- Hand protection must be worn any time your hands are exposed to a potential hazard.
- Do not wear clothing with exposed zippers, buttons, or other metal fasteners.
- Remove rings, wristwatches, and any other metal jewelry before beginning work.
- Make sure that tools used on energized electrical equipment are nonconductive and have the proper voltage rating.
- Install all electrical wiring according to the current NEC® codes.
- Work with a buddy. Avoid working alone.
- Always turn power off and lock it out before working on any electrical circuits or equipment.
- Never cut off the grounding prong from a three-prong plug on any power extension cord or from a power cord to any piece of equipment.
- Do not defeat the purpose of any safety devices such as fuses or circuit breakers.
- Do not open and close switches under load unless absolutely necessary.
- **Assume all electrical equipment to be "live" and treat it as such.**

Non-Energized Testing

Never test an energized circuit when individual components of the circuit can normally be tested by other means. Most electrical components and pathways of electrical systems can be individually tested for continuity and resistance.

Insulated Tools

Insulated tools are designed for safety and are rated for live use up to 1000 VAC or 1500 VDC. They must be tested at 10 times that value (more than 10,000 V). Insulated tools should be used and stored differently from conventional, non-insulated tools. When being used, they should be kept isolated from other tools, including other insulated tools, to prevent them from getting scraped or nicked. They should be inspected prior to each use and discarded or tested by a reliable authority if damage is suspected.

- Tool Rating: 1000 VAC or 1500 VDC
- Glove Rating: Tested: 20000VAC/50,000V DC., Max Use:17000VAC/25500V DC

10.1.2: Electrical Tools and Testing Equipment

While most all of the tools introduced in previous sections of this book can be used to perform many electrical maintenance tasks, other tools, some especially specific to the electrical trades, will be introduced in this section.

Electrical Tools

Electrical Meters and Testers

- **Direct Current (DC)**- DC is an electric current that is uni-directional, so the flow of charge is always in the same direction.
- **Alternating Current (AC)**- Alternating current changes its direction of flow at a specific frequency known as its' Hertz (Hz) rating. In the United States, AC current changes 60 times per second or a rate of 60 Hz. In Europe the rating for AC current is 50 Hz
- **Continuity**- A complete pathway for current to flow.
- **Polarity**- Refers to the north and south poles of magnetic fields. Direction of flow of the current in DC circuits. Referred to as positive and negative.

Meter Safety

- Make sure the meter you are using has a rating equal to or exceeding the highest value of electrical quantity you are measuring.
- Always wear safety glasses when using test and measurement instruments.
- Wear rubber gloves when testing or measuring "live" electrical circuits or equipment.
- Keep your clothing,hands, and feet as dry as possible when taking measurements.
- Never work on energized circuits unless absolutely necessary.
- Don't work alone, especially on "'live" circuits.
- If you must take measurements on energized circuits, make sure you have been properly trained to work with "live" circuits.
- Recalibration is necessary from time to time to bring a meter back to its intended level of accuracy.

Meter Care

- Handle all meters with care; they are fragile, sensitive instruments.
- Keep the meters clean and dry.
- Don't store analog meters next to strong magnets; magnets can cause the meters to become inaccurate.
- Don't expose meters to large temperature changes.
- Make sure you know the type of circuit you are testing (AC or DC)
- Never let the value being measured exceed the range of the meter.
- Multimeters and ohmmeters will need to have their batteries changed from time to time.
- Many meters have fuses to protect them from exposure to excessive voltage or current values.
- Re-calibrate measuring instruments once a year.

10.1.3: Electrical Terminology and Lighting

Terminology

Ground- is a safety conductor with a low impedance path to earth. It is often called the **"ground wire"** or safety ground. It is either bare or has green insulation.

Hot- is any conductor connected that has electric potential relative to electrical ground or neutral. In 110/220 volt systems this conductor is either black or red, and in some instances, blue. The hot conductor terminates on brass colored terminals.

Neutral- is also called the **"grounded conductor"** and is represented by the white insulated conductor. It will terminate on the silver terminal (longer slot on a receptacle face) of receptacles, and at the neutral bus bar in circuit breaker panels.

Leg-, as in **"hot leg"**, refers to one of multiple hot conductors in a circuit. Example: 240 volt circuits feature a neutral and two hot legs, 240 V to each other, and 120 V each to the neutral.

Line- is the **"in"** side of the device where the wires from the panel (or other equipment feeding the device) are connected.

Load- is the **"out"** side of the device where any items that are to be serviced by the device are connected.

Hard-wire- refers to directly wiring to an appliance's terminal block or by wire nuts in a junction box instead of attaching it by using a receptacle and cord/plug assembly.

Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI)- Disconnects a circuit when it detects that the electric current is not balanced between the energized conductor and the return neutral conductor. Could be caused by current leakage through the body of a person who is grounded and accidentally touching the energized part of the circuit.

Lighting

Luminaire

A luminaire is a complete lighting unit consisting of a lamp or lamps together with the fixture (parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect the lamps and ballast (where applicable), and to connect the lamps to the power supply). The overall performance of a lighting system is a combination of the quantity and quality of light the lamps produce. Light output is measured in lumens. The amount of energy used by a lamp type is measured in watts. Efficacy is an indicator of performance which is rated in LPW (lumens per watt). The higher LPW, the more efficient the light source is.

Lighting Fixtures

Lighting fixtures are designed to meet a variety of applications and aesthetic requirements. Each fixture comes with specific installation instructions provided by the manufacturer that should be red prior to installing the lighting fixture. Some can be both wall and ceiling mount, wile other fixtures may be designed for only one method or the other. Each fixture also comes with labeling listing installation restrictions pertaining to location, mounting requirements, and wiring methods. Always connect fixtures to the electrical system with the proper polarity.

Common information found on a lighting fixture label:

- For wall mount only or ceiling mount only
- Maximum lamp wattage
- Lamp type
- Suitable for operation in an ambient temperature not exceeding ____°F (°C).
- Suitable for use in suspended ceilings, damp locations, and/or wet locations.
- Suitable for mounting on low-density cellulose fiberboard.
- For supply connections, use wire rated at least _____ °F (°C).
- Thermally protected.
- Type *Non-IC or **Type IC (common to recessed ceiling fixtures that are often called "can" fixtures)

*Type NON-IC- Installed so the insulation is no closer than 3″ (75 mm) to any part of the fixture.

**Type IC- Designed to be in direct contact with thermal insulation.

Lamp Types

Light is the visible portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. Lamp manufacturers are concerned with three factors: color temperature, color rendering, and lamp efficacy.

Color temperature of a light source is a measurement of its color appearance measured in degrees Kelvin (°K). Light at higher-temperature wavelengths (blue and white) is referred to as “cool”, whereas light from lower-temperature wavelengths is referred to as “warm”. These descriptions have nothing to do with temperature, but with the way the colors appear. Warm light sources are commonly used for residential applications because they make colors appear more natural and vibrant.

Incandescent- Relies on the resistance of a tungsten filament to create light. Least efficient as it produces more heat than light. Standard household incandescent bulbs are being phased out of production.

Florescent-Requires a magnetic or electronic ballast to provide voltage surge required to start the lamp and current control that allows the lamp to operate efficiently. Consists of a tube filled with inert gas like argon or krypton, and small amount of mercury. Electrons emitted from cathodes strike particles of mercury vapor, producing ultraviolet radiation causing a phosphor coating on the inside of the glass tube to glow and produce light energy. More efficient than incandescent lighting.

Compact Florescent- These bulbs were developed to save up to 75% in energy cost and last 10 times longer than incandescent models. CFLs have heavy metal environmental disposal concerns to include lead, zinc, copper and mercury.

Light-Emitting Diode (LED)- LEDs offer energy savings of 80% to 90% over incandescent lamps with a reported operating life of up to 100,000 hours. They are offered in most all bulb sizes and base configurations.

10.1.4: Conduit, Boxes, and Wiring

Conduit

Raceways are defined as enclosed channels of metal or nonmetallic material designed expressly for holding wires or cables. Branch-circuit installation using a raceway (conduit) wiring method is seldom used in residential wiring. However, some areas of the country require that all wiring in a house be installed in a raceway wiring method. Raceways should be installed as a complete system and be securely fastened in place and supported by an approved retainer.

Use individual conductors when installing a circuit in a raceway wiring method. It is common wiring practice to install a green insulated equipment grounding conductor in every raceway. Electric codes have specific requirements for wiring in different types of conduit that include allowable fill rates that vary depending upon wire size and insulation type.

The following conduits are used primarily in light to heavy commercial application and are listed here for your reference:

Rigid metal conduit (RMC)– RMC is generally made of steel with a protective galvanized coating. It is a threadable raceway designed for the physical protection and routing of conductors and cables and for use as an equipment grounding conductor when installed with appropriate fittings. It can be used in all atmospheric conditions and forms of occupancy. Requires pipe and thread cutting specialty tools.

Intermediate metal conduit (IMC)– IMC is a thinner-walled version of rigid metal conduit and can be used in all locations in a house where rigid metal conduit is permitted to be used. It can be used as an equipment grounding conductor when installed with associated couplings and appropriate fittings. Requires pipe and thread cutting specialty tools.

Raceways used in residential wiring include:

EMT Conduit Bending

Bending conduit is a skill that improves with practice. The most common electrical conduit installed in houses is EMT and, for this reason, the discussion that follows on conduit bending will focus on EMT. The bending techniques described may also apply to the other types of circular metal raceways.

EMT is bent in the field using either a hand bender, a hydraulic bender, or an electric bender. Bend sizes 1/2″ through 1-1/4″ are usually formed with a hand bender. A hydraulic or electric power bender is generally used for larger sizes. Since most EMT installed in houses will be 1/2″, 3/4″, or 1″ trade sizes, we will focus on bending with a hand bender.

When making a bend using a hand bender:

- Wear safety glasses and observe all applicable safety rules.
- Bend on a flat surface that is not slippery.
- Mark the locations on the conduit where you wish to make the bends clearly and accurately.
- Apply heavy foot pressure on the foot pedal to keep the conduit tightly in the bender.
- When making multiple bends on the same pipe length, keep all bends in the same plane.

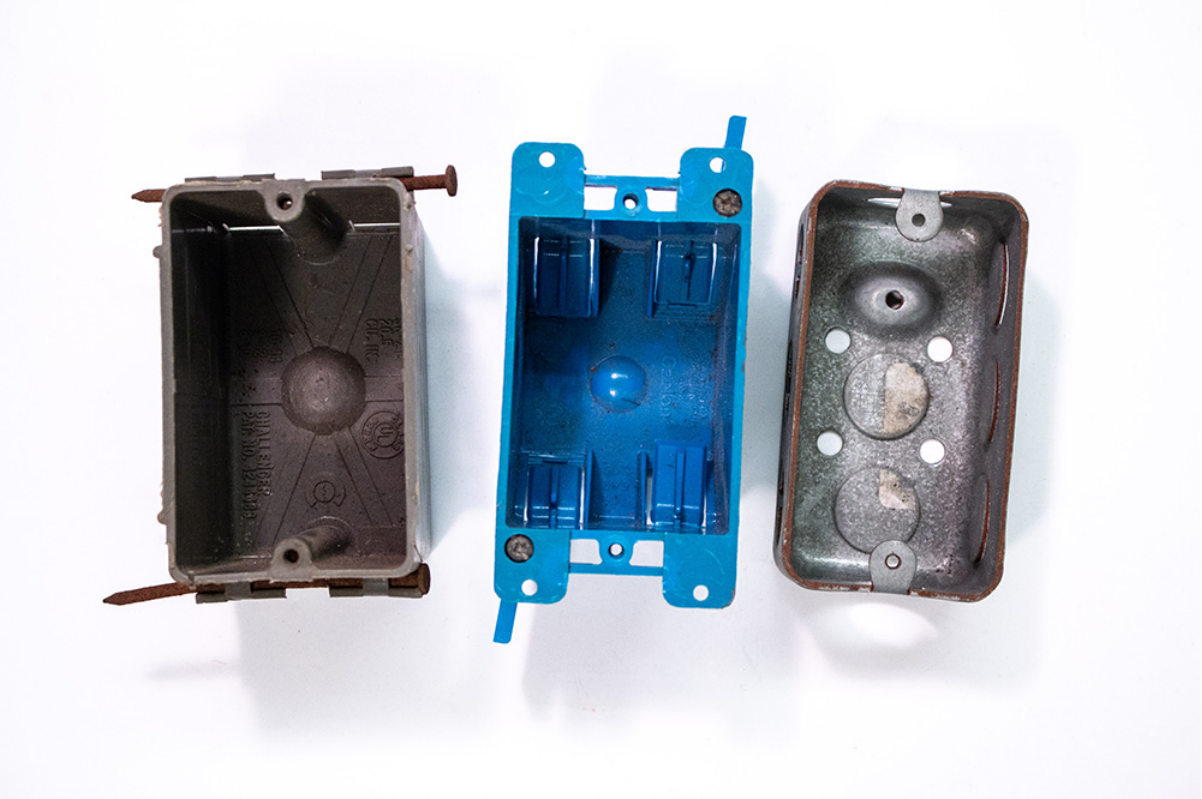
IDEAL Hand Conduit Benders

IDEAL Benders How To Bend a Stub

IDEAL Hand Conduit Bender How to Make a Back to Back Bend

Conduit Bending Basics 3 Bend Saddle

Boxes



Electrical Boxes by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Electrical boxes have many mounting options that range from configurations designed to be nailed or screwed to framing members or blocking, to models for remodeling (called an “old work” box) that attach to the sheetrock that encloses a wall pocket.

Device Boxes- are used to install receptacles or switches at specific locations on an electrical circuit. Standard box openings are approximately 3″ x 2″ with a depth that ranges from 1-1/2″ to 3-1/2″.

Outlet Boxes- are used when installing lighting fixtures in a ceiling or on a wall and when connecting small or large appliances. They are larger than a device box and provide more room for different wiring situations. Outlet boxes are offered in round, octagon, or square shapes.

Junction Boxes (J-Box)- These are used when several conductors are spliced together at a point on the wiring system. The NEC® requires junction boxes to be accessible after installation without the finish of a building having to be altered. Junction boxes must always be covered.

Heavy Load Boxes- Specifically designed and tested to support heavier loads. Used for heavier loads such as ceiling suspended paddle fans. Heavy load boxes can be manufactured with metal or nonmetal material.

Metal Boxes

A metal device box often includes the capability of having the sides of the box removed and the boxes ganged together to make a box that can accommodate multiple devices. The most common metal device box size 3″ x 2″ x 3-1/2″. Another type of metallic device box recognized by the NEC® is the “handy” or “utility” box. This type of box is primarily used for surface mounting and can accommodate one device such as a receptacle or switch.

Nonmetallic Device Boxes

Nonmetallic boxes are usually made of PVC, phenolic, or polycarbonate. The specific advantages of using these boxes include that they are lightweight, strong, very easy to install, and inexpensive. Most all nonmetallic boxes are wired using a nonmetallicsheathed cable wiring method. Nonmetallic boxes are offered in single-gang, two-gang, three-gang device box, and fixture mounting styles.

PVC Conduit Boxes

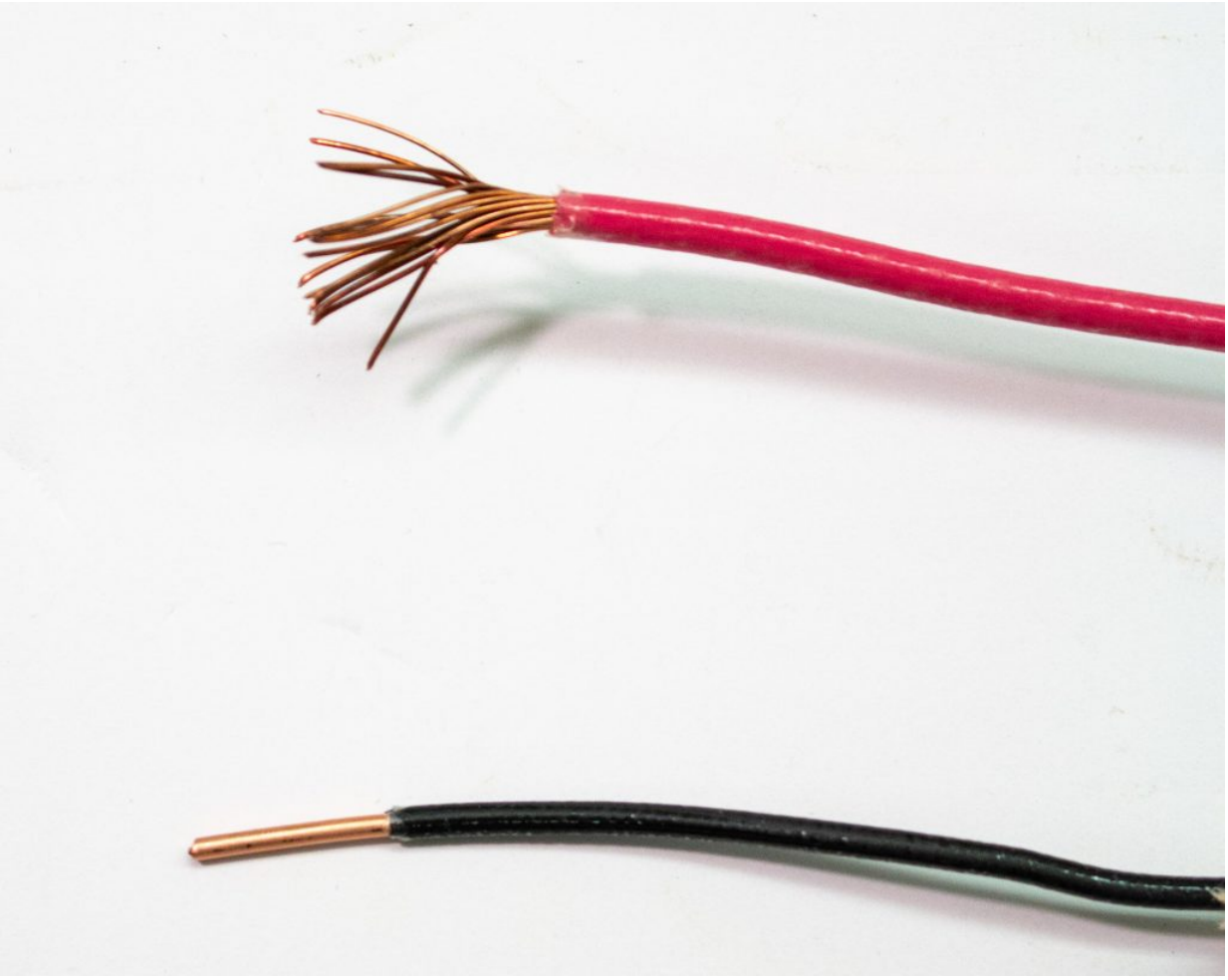
Although PVC boxes are designed and used for glue-up assembly, some models have female threaded fittings to accommodate a variety of threaded connectors.

Wires (Conductors)

Conductors in residential wiring are usually installed in a cable assembly. They are made of copper, aluminum, and copper-clad aluminum. Copper is preferred because of its great ability to conduct electricity, its strength, and its low instance of problems over the long term.

Conductors are sized according to the American Wire Gauge (AWG). Conductors used in residential wiring typically range in size from 14 AWG to 2/0 copper. The larger the number, the smaller the conductor. The smaller the number, the larger the conductor. Conductor sizes larger than 4/0 are listed in kcmil (1000 circular mils).

Ampacity is the current in amperes that a conductor can carry continuously under the conditions of use without exceeding its temperature rating. A residential electrician or maintenance technician must be able to choose the correct conductor size based on the ampacity needed for each circuit they are working with. The ampacity of a conductor depends not only on the diameter size of the conductor, but also on the length of the conductor, and what insulation type the conductor has.



Stranded Wire vs Solid Wire by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

THHN and THWN are codes for the two most common types of insulated wire used inside conduit. These types of conductors are often used in conjunction with flexible conduit in unfinished areas, such as basements and garages, and for short exposed runs

inside the home, such as wiring connections for garbage disposers and hot water heaters. They are also used in solid material conduit branch circuits. The letters indicate specific properties of the wire insulation:

T: thermoplastic
H: heat-resistant; HH means highly heat-resistant
W: rated for wet locations
N: nylon-coated, for added protection

Solid Core VS. Stranded Wire- While solid wire consists of a single metal core, while a stranded wire is composed of numerous thinner wires twisted together into a cohesive bunch. Both types of wire are appropriate for commercial and residential installation, however each has particular advantages and disadvantages that lead to the choice of one over another for each particular application.

USE	SOLID WIRE	STRANDED WIRE
Protection against corrosion	YES	NO
Outdoor use	YES	NO
Price advantage	YES	NO
Where flexibility is important	NO	YES
Repetitive motion	NO	YES

Wire Color and Use

Color choice for the insulation of the conductors installed in a raceway depends on the type of circuit it serves.

• For a 120-volt branch circuit, use a white insulated wire and a black insulated wire.
• For a straight 240-volt circuit (like an electric water heater), use two black conductors or a black and a red conductor.
• If the circuit is a 120/240-volt circuit (like an electric clothes dryer), run a white insulated wire, a black insulated wire, and a red insulated wire.

The NEC® requires that each conductor be color coded to indicate the function that it performs in a circuit.

Black– Used as an ungrounded or “hot” conductor and carries the current to the load in 120-volt circuits.

Red– Also used as an ungrounded or “hot” conductor and carries current to the load in 120/240-volt circuits like an electric clothes dryer circuit.

White– Used as the grounded circuit conductor
– Returns current from the load back to the source
– Called “neutral” conductor, but only true “neutral” when used with black and red wire in multi-wire circuit

Bare– Used as equipment grounding conductor that bonds all non-current carrying metal parts of a circuit together; never carries current.

Green (can be green with yellow stripes)– Used as an insulated equipment grounding conductor; never carries current.

Conductor Installation

Conductors are usually pulled into the conduit, but in shorter runs between electrical boxes conductors they may be pushed through the raceway. Conductors are taken off spools in a way that results in the conductors coming off the spools easily and not becoming tangled with each other. One of the easiest ways to do this is to use a wire cart that allows several spools of wire to be put on at one time.

If the length of conduit between boxes is fairly long, use a fish tape. If the conduit already contains wires, be sure the circuits that supply them are de-energized. Pull the fish tape out of its reel. Insert it into a raceway and push it through until it comes out at a box location. The fish tape will have a hook on the end of it. Attach the conductors to the fish tape end. While one person pulls the conductors slowly off the spools, another person will pull the fish tape with the attached conductors back through the raceway.

Klein Tools Laser-etched Fiberglass Fish Tapes

If the length of a conduit run is longer than the length of your longest fish tape, another technique can be used. One technique uses a vacuum/compression device to blow or suck a “mouse” with a string tied to it though the length of conduit. Once the mouse has been blown or sucked through the conduit, the attached string is removed from the mouse and tied to a stronger pulling rope, which is then pulled though the conduit. The pulling rope is then attached to the wires and they are pulled into the conduit.

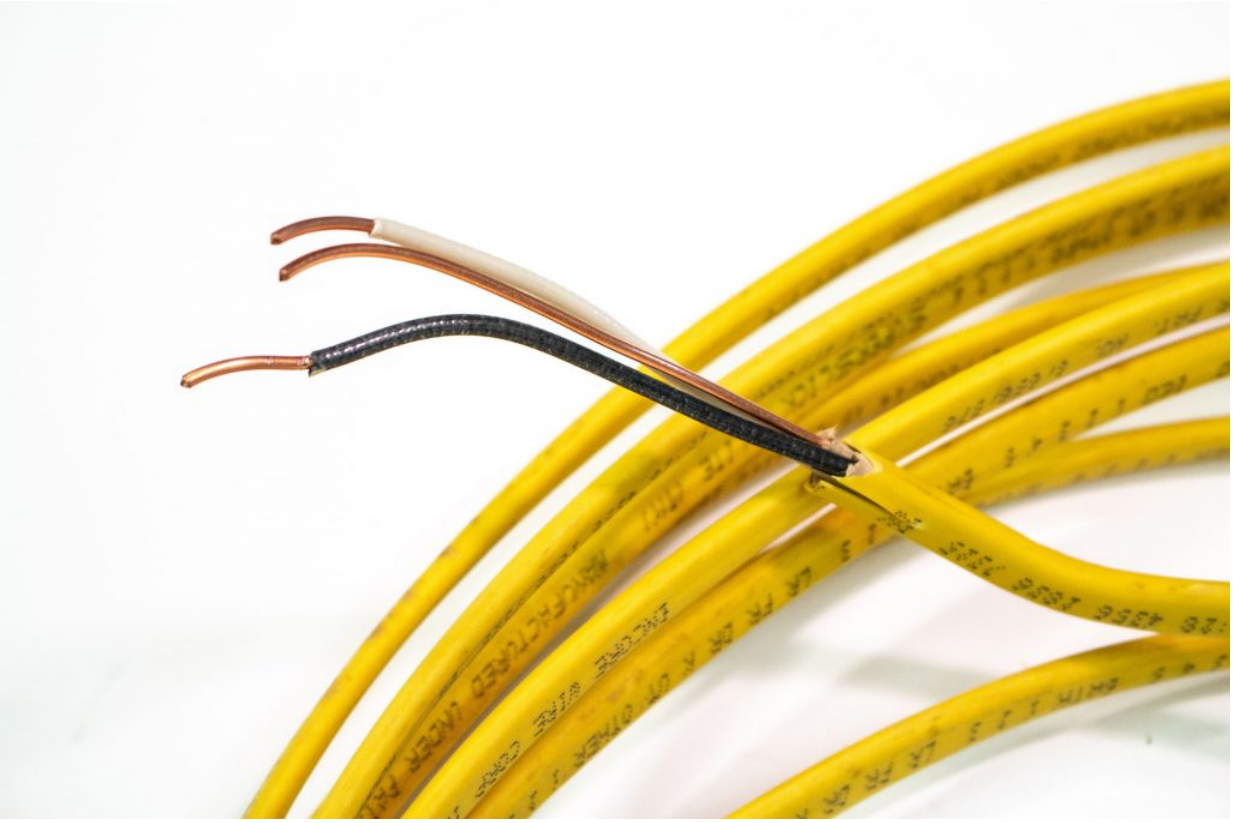
Terminations

Cable Types

Cable wiring methods are easier to install than raceway wiring methods, and this is the main reason why most houses are wired using as little conduit as possible. Cable wire contains all of the conductors needed for the circuit in a single insulated unit.

When purchasing cable wiring system the cable is referred to by two numbers: the first number specifies the gauge; the second the number of current carrying conductors in the wire. Additionally, there’s usually another wire that is used for grounding (green or bare). “12-2” means 12 gauge, two insulated current carrying wires, and a bare ground. 12-2 wire usually has a black, white and bare ground wire. Black, red, and a ground with no white wire is used for 220V circuits without neutral. 12-3 wire usually has a black, red, white and bare ground wire and is used for 220V with neutral or in three-way switch applications as the traveler between the switches where an additional wire is required.

Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable (Type NM)- Also known as “Romex”. Least expensive and most used residential wiring method to purchase and install.



Romex® Cable by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Types of Type NM cable:

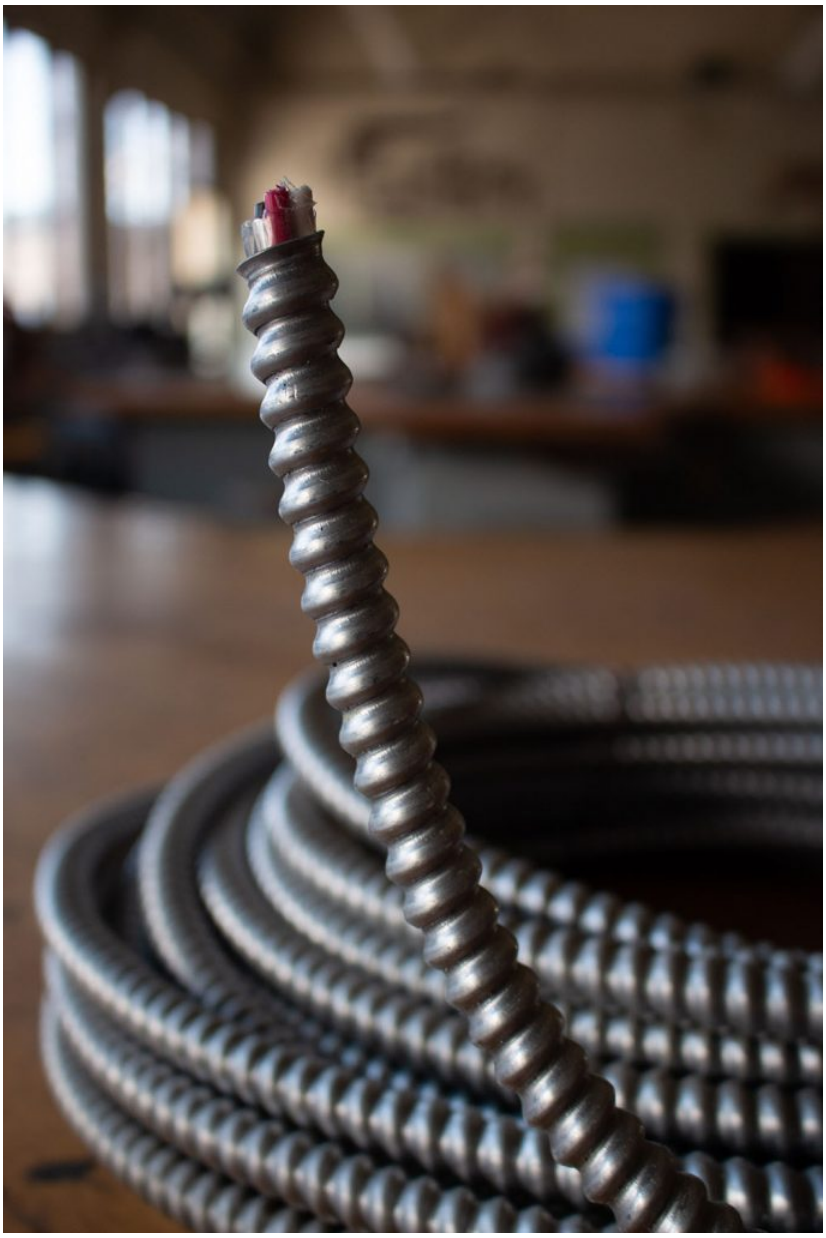
- **Type NM-B (white outer jacket)**- Most common type; use in dry locations only. Has a flame-retardant, moisture-resistant, nonmetallic outer jacket.
- **Type NMC-B (yellow outer jacket)**- Not used often in residential work ; use in dry or damp locations. Has a flame retardant, fungus and corrosion resistant, nonmetallic outer jacket.

- **Type NMS-B (orange outer jacket)-** Used in new homes with home automation systems. Contains power conductors, telephone wires, coaxial cable for video, and other data conductors all in the same cable. Has moisture-resistant, flame-retardant, nonmetallic outer jacket.

Underground Feeder Cable (Type UF)- Used for underground installation of branch circuits and feeder circuits. Also used in interior installations, but must be installed following the installation requirements for Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable.

Underground Feeder Cable (Type UF) by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Armored-Clad (Type AC) and Metal-Clad (Type MC) Cable- Certain locations in the United States may not allow Nonmetallic Sheathed Cable in residential construction. Both have a metal outer sheathing and provide very high levels of physical protection for the conductors in the cable. Electricians sometimes find it hard to tell Type AC (also known as “BX” cable) and Type MC apart. Type AC cable has brown paper covering each conductor and Type MC cable has a clear plastic wrap around all of the conductors.



Metal-Clad (MC) Cable by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

10.1.5: Fuses and Breakers

In residential wiring, overcurrent protection devices consist of fuses or circuit breakers. The NEC® states that overcurrent protection for conductors and equipment is provided to open the circuit if the current reaches a value that will cause an excessive or dangerous temperature in conductors or conductor insulation. Both circuit breakers and fuses are used for this purpose. However, circuit breakers are used in most building electrical systems.

Panelboards and Loadcenters

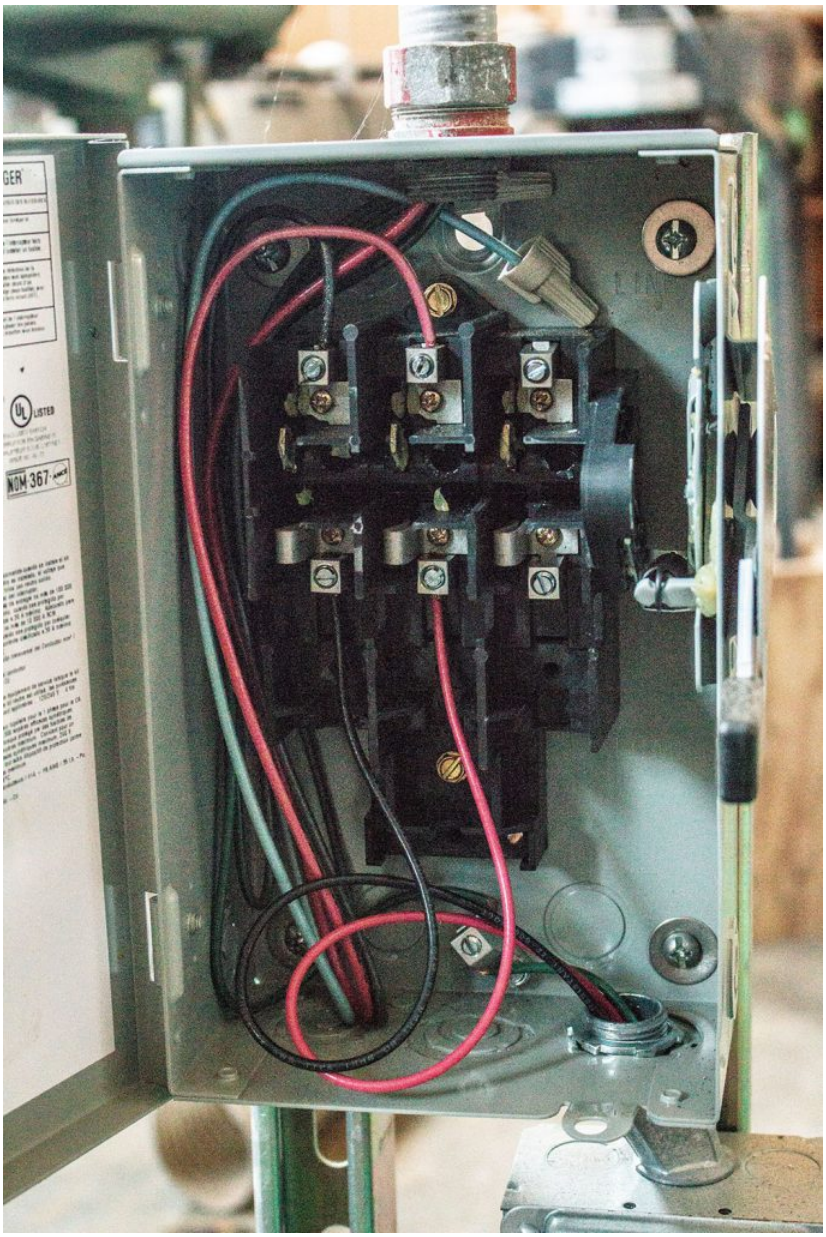
The following items are used to contain and organize overcurrent devices in residential, commercial, and industrial wiring applications:

Panelboard- A single panel that includes automatic overcurrent devices used for the protection of light, heat, and power circuits.

Panelboard by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Loadcenter-A type of panelboard that contains the main disconnecting means for the residential service entrance as well as the fuses or circuit breakers used to protect circuits and equipment like water heaters, ranges, dryers, and lighting.

Safety Switches- A safety switch is used as a disconnecting means for larger electrical equipment. It is typically mounted on the surface of or near the equipment and is operated with an external handle. Safety switches can simply be an On/Off device or can have overload protection devices incorporated in their design. Safety switches can be found in both cartridge fuse or breaker configurations.



Safety Switch by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Fuses

A fuse is a overcurrent protection device that opens a circuit when a fusible link is melted away by the extreme heat caused by an over current. Causes can include a short circuit or excessive load. Electricians and maintenance technicians may encounter two styles of fuses protecting circuits:

Plug fuses- These fuses "screw" into a socket device, either an Edison base model or a Type S model. These devices are seldom used as circuit breakers can be reset and are considered more reliable and tamper resistant. Some codes may restrict the use of plug

fuses in building electrical systems.

Plug Fuse by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

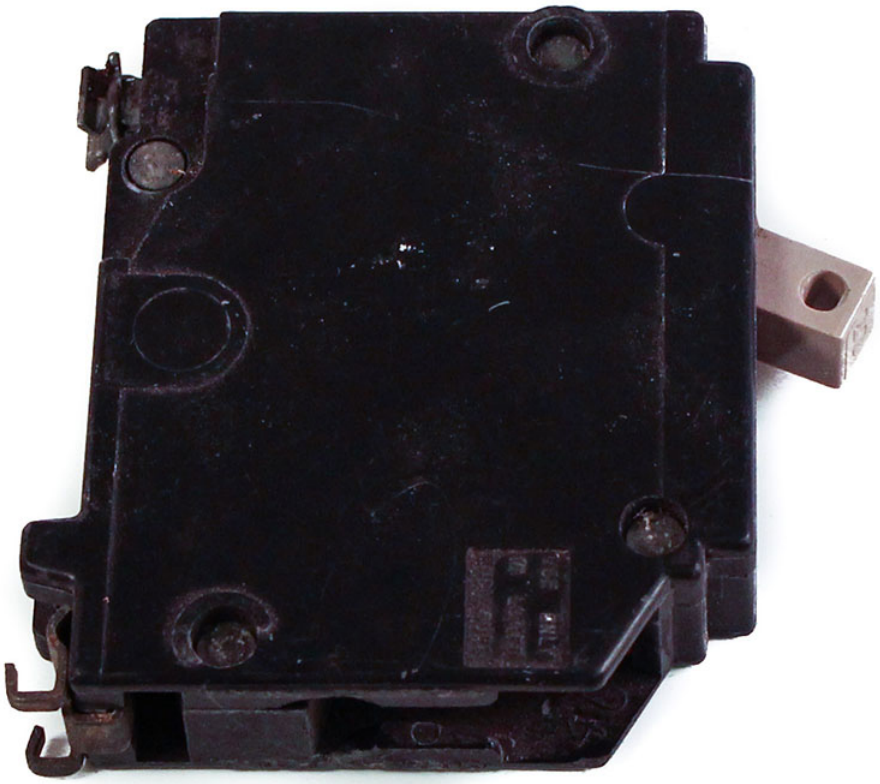
Cartridge fuses- Cartridge fuses are available as a ferrule model or a blade-type model. Fuses must be plainly marked, either by printing on the fuse barrel or by a label attached to the barrel showing the amperage and voltage ratings. Often used in equipment safety switches.

Cartridge Fuse by Mako Shimada is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Circuit Breakers

Circuit breakers- are available as a single-pole device for 120-volt applications and as a two-pole device for 240-volt applications. They also come as a twin or dual device that fits in the space of a regular single-pole breaker. Circuit breakers are designed so that any fault must be cleared before the circuit breaker can be reset. Even if the handle is held in the “ON” position, the circuit breaker will remain tripped as long as there is a trip-rated fault on the circuit. In some cases, time is required for the breaker to cool before it can be reset.

- Most branch circuits are 120-volt circuits. These are wired with 14 AWG or 12 AWG copper conductors and require 15 or 20 amp single-pole circuit breakers. A single-pole circuit breaker takes up one space on a panelboard.
- Many branch circuits serve appliances like electric water heaters, air conditioners, and electric heating units. These loads require 240 volts to operate properly. since it is a 240-volt circuit, it needs a two-pole circuit breaker. A two-pole circuit breaker takes up two spaces on the panelboard.



20 Amp Circuit Breaker by Mako Shimada is licensed under CC BY 4.0

It is important to note the manufacturer and style of a breaker when replacing it. Different manufacturers produce propitiatory designs that can only be used in their own panels and are not compatible with others.

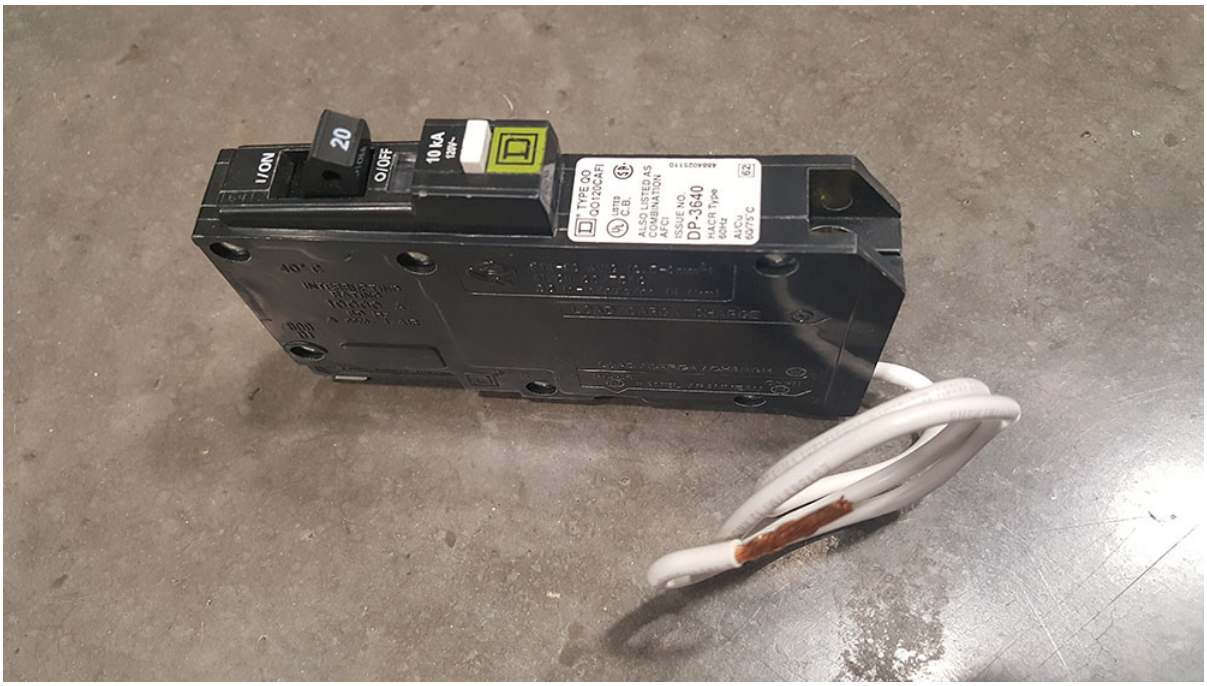
240-Volt Branch Circuit Requirements

- 15-amp circuit breaker when wired with 14 AWG wire
- 20-amp circuit breaker when wired with 12 AWG wire
- 30-amp circuit breaker when wired with 10 AWG wire

Appliance Circuits- There may be a need for 120/240 volts to be supplied to appliances such as electric clothes dryers and electric ranges. This installation requires a two-pole circuit breaker, just like the 240-vo ">

GFCI Circuit Breaker by Bernard Sula is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Arc Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI)- AFCI devices are designed to trip when they sense rapid fluctuations in the current flow that are typical of arcing conditions. AFCI protection is provided with AFCI circuit breakers and new codes require that all residences be constructed with them. AFCI circuit breakers look very similar to GFCI circuit breakers. The “Push-to-Test” button is typically a different color than that of a GFCI breaker.



AFCI Circuit Breaker by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Common Branch Circuits

General Branch Circuits

- **14 AWG** copper conductor and protected with a **15-ampere** fuse or circuit breaker.
- **12 AWG** copper conductor protected with a **20-ampere** fuse or circuit breaker.

Small Appliance Branch-12 AWG copper conductors. Larger size wire may be used to compensate for voltage drop when the distance back to the electrical panel is very long.

- **Washer**- 120 Volt 20 Amp
- **Garbage Disposal**- 120 Volt 15 Amp
- **Dishwasher**- 120 Volt 15 Amp

Range Branch-Uses an 8/3 copper cable with ground protected by a 40-ampere circuit breaker, or a 6/3 copper cable with ground protected by a 50-ampere circuit breaker.

Clothes Dryer Branch- Usually a 30-amp circuit wired with 10/3 cable. Usually connected to the electrical system in a house through a cord-and-plug type connection.

Water Heater Branch- Electric water heaters used in homes normally operate on 240 volts. They normally require a 10 AWG conductor with a 30-ampere overcurrent protection device. Some smaller single element electric water heaters may require 120 volts and will be wired with a dedicated branch circuit with 12 AWG conductors and a 20-ampere overcurrent protection device.

Circuit Breaker Replacement

Always turn off electrical power at the main service breaker when working in an energized main breaker panel.
• The LOAD side of the panel will be disconnected, but the LINE side will still be energized.
• If you are working in an energized subpanel, find the circuit breaker in the service panel, turn it off, and lock it in the OFF position.

Test the panel you are working on with a voltage tester to verify that the electrical power is off.
• NEVER assume the panel is de-energized.

Circuit breakers are installed by attaching them to the main bus bar assembly in the panel. The bus bar assembly is connected to the incoming service entrance conductors and distributes the electrical power to each of the circuit breakers located in the panel. In the case of a subpanels, bus bars are connected to the incoming feeder conductors.

Circuit breakers are attached to the bus bar by contacts in the breakers being snapped onto the bus bar at specific locations, commonly called stabs.
• A single-pole circuit breaker has one stab contact.
• A two-pole circuit breaker has two stab contacts.

GFI Breaker Installation

10.1.6: Receptacle and Switch Wiring

Receptacles and switches are known as devices. A device is defined as a unit of an electrical system intended to carry, but not use, electric energy. Components that distribute or control energy, but do not consume electricity include:

- Switches
- Receptacles
- Attachment plugs
- Lamp holders or sockets

Always de-energize the electrical circuit first before servicing or installing any of the following devices.

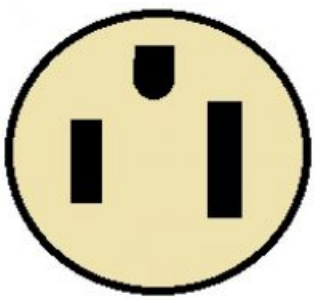
Receptacles

Receptacles are contact devices installed at the outlet for the connection of an attachment plug. While many people (including electricians) refer to a receptacle as an “outlet”, “socket”, or “plug,” they are the wrong terms to use.

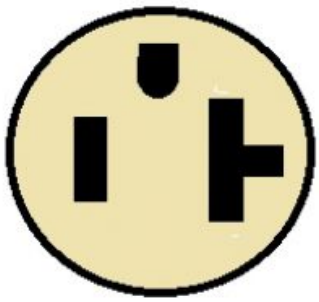
A single receptacle is a single contact device.
A duplex receptacle has two contact devices.
A multiple receptacle has more than two contact devices.

Common House Wiring Receptacles

125 Volt Receptacles



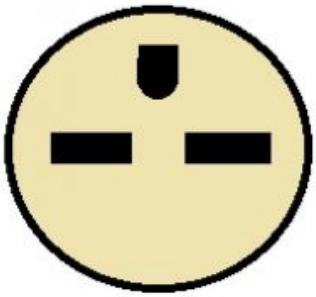
15 AMPERE, 125 VOLT, NEMA 5-15R RECEPTACLE, CAN BE USED ON 15 AMPERE MAXIMUM BRANCH CIRCUITS. THE TALLER SLOT IS THE GROUNDED CONDUCTOR SLOT



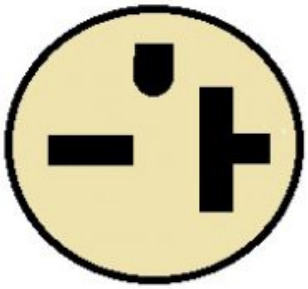
20 AMPERE, 125 VOLT, NEMA 5-20R RECEPTACLE, CAN BE USED ON BOTH 15 AND 20 AMPERE BRANCH CIRCUITS. THE "T" SLOT IS THE GROUNDED CONDUCTOR

15 Amp, 125 V and 20 Amp, 125 V by Clifford Rutherford are licensed under CC BY 4.0

250 Volt Receptacles



15 AMPER, 250 VOLT, NEMA 6-15R RECEPTACLE, CAN BE USED ON 15 AMPERE MAXIMUM BRANCH CIRCUITS. STANDARD 125 VOLT PLUGS WILL NOT FIT. OFTEN USED FOR 240 VOLT WINDOW AC UNITS.



20 AMPERE, 250 VOLT, NEMA 6-20R RECEPTACLE, CAN BE USED ON BOTH 15 AND 20 AMPERE BRANCH CIRCUITS. 125 VOLT PLUGS WILL NOT FIT. CAN BE USED FOR 240 VOLT WINDOW AIR CONDITIONERS

15 Amp, 250 V and 20 Amp, 250 V by Clifford Rutherford are licensed under CC BY 4.0

Receptacle Installation

When connecting circuit conductors to a receptacle (or switch):
Form terminal loops in the wire, put the loop under a terminal screw, looping the wire around the terminal screw in the direction the screw tightens (clockwise in almost all cases), and tighten the screw the proper amount. A terminal screw that is not tightened properly or a wire not looped properly around a screw will typically be the cause of future problems. Push-in terminations are available but are not as good a termination as a terminal loop termination.

The listing instructions for devices like receptacles and switches normally allow only one wire to be terminated to each terminal screw. However, many electrical boxes containing receptacles or switches could have many circuit conductors requiring connections to the device terminal screws. The best way to make the necessary connections so that only one conductor gets connected to a terminal screw is to use a pigtail.

Once the particular receptacle you are installing is connected to the electrical system, secure it to the device box. Make sure the conductors inside the box are pushed to the back of the device box, leaving enough room to install the receptacle.

Carefully push the receptacle into the device box, checking that the ears on the top and bottom of the receptacle yoke will rest against the sheetrock when the receptacle is installed. Once you have determined that the receptacle ears will rest against the drywall or finish surface properly, attach the receptacle to the device box using the properly sized machine screws. Make sure the receptacle is flush with the wall and straight, then attach the cover.

Duplex Receptacles (3 Wires): The most common type of receptacle used in residential wiring is a duplex receptacle rated for 15 amperes at 125 volts. It consists of two single receptacles on the same mounting strap. As many of these devices are installed close to ground level, Tamper-Resistant (T-R) receptacles are required in some locations to protect children.

20 Amp Duplex by Bernard Sula is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Ungrounded black conductor– Connected to the brass colored terminal
Grounded white conductor– Connected to the silver screw terminal
Bare or green grounding conductor– Connected to the green grounding screw

How Tamper-Resistant Receptacles Work

Split-Wired Duplex Receptacle- A split-wired duplex receptacle usually has a switch controlling half of the receptacle and the other half is hot all the time. They are often used to provide an accessible switching device near a doorway that controls a plug-in table lamp across the room (ex: bedside table- split-wire receptacle allows the light to be turned on and off by the doorway, but the alarm clock plugged into the same duplex receptacle remains on at all times). Before installing, remove the tab connecting the terminal screws on the hot side of the receptacle. Do not remove the tab connecting the silver terminal screws.

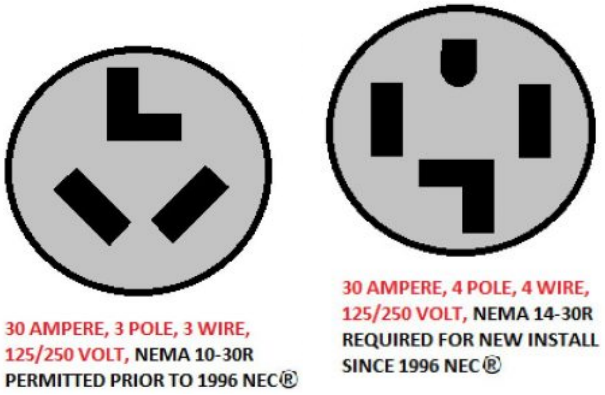
Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter GFCI- Connect GFCI receptacles to the electrical system in much the same manner as regular duplex receptacles. However, on the back of the GFCI receptacles, one of the brass screw terminals and one of the silver screw terminals are marked for the “Line,” or incoming power conductors. The other set of screw terminals are marked as “Load” terminals, or the outgoing power conductors that protect other receptacles downstream of the GFCI.

GFCI Receptacle by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Specialty Receptacle Types

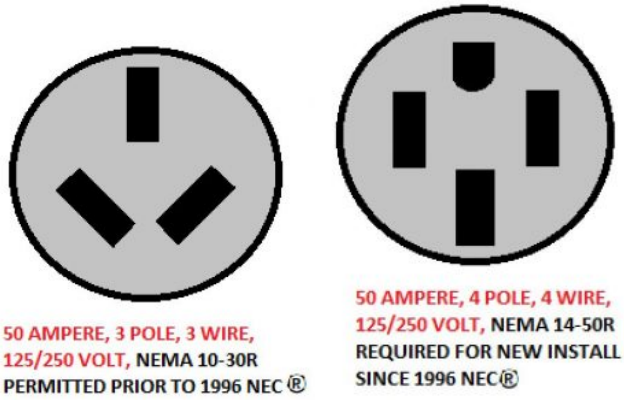
Two appliances typically require a special 125/250 volt receptacle installation. These receptacles are larger and have different configurations than the single or duplex receptacles.

125/250 Volt Electric Clothes Dryer



Dryer 30 Amp, 3 Pole and *Dryer 30 Amp, 4 Pole* by Clifford Rutherford are licensed under CC BY 4.0

125/250 Volt Electric Range



Range 50 Amp, 3 Pole and *Range 50 Amp, 4 Pole* by Clifford Rutherford are licensed under CC BY 4.0

Switches

Switches are used to control the various lighting accessories, and sometimes receptacles or equipment, installed in residential wiring. The procedures for installing a switch are very similar to receptacle installation procedures. The main difference is the number of switches installed in multi-gang boxes: In residential installations, two- and three-gang switch boxes are common. Take care to ensure there is enough room in the device box for all conductors and switches.

There are two styles of switches commonly used residential and commercial construction: toggle and rocker (also known as decor). While rocker switches are also considered decorative and may be more desirable in some cases, they often have a wider profile than toggle switches and may require more space in the switch box. Because there are so many multi-gang switch boxes, make sure all the switches are level so the faceplate will be level when it is installed.

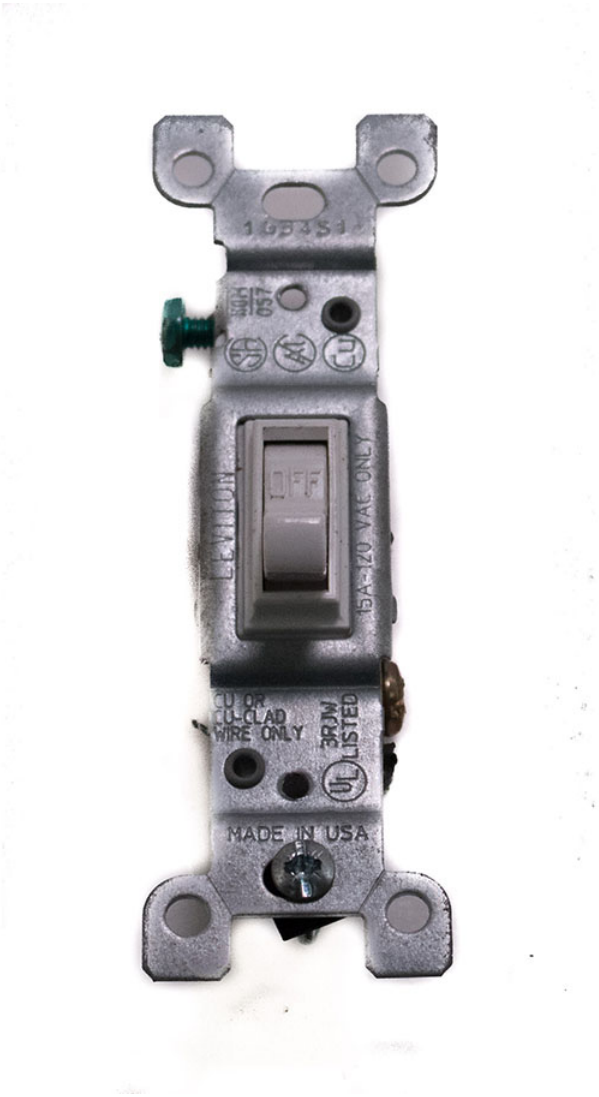
Switch rating must be matched to the voltage and current you encounter with the circuit on which you are using the switch. Many residential lighting circuits are wired with 14 AWG conductors protected with a 15-amp circuit breaker and will require switches with a 15 amp, 120 volt rating. This switch rating is the most common found in residential wiring.

Single-pole, three-way, and four-way switches are to be wired so that all switching is done in the ungrounded circuit conductor. There is no need to connect a white insulated grounded conductor to any switch in a residential switching circuit.

Single Pole Switch- The single-pole switch used in 120- volt circuits to control a lighting outlet or outlets from only one location is the most common. On a single-pole switch, two wires will be connected to the two terminal screws on the switch. Both wires will be considered “hot” ungrounded conductors.One is the incoming power wire and the other wire runs to the light fixture or receptacle.

- Connect two conductors (usually black or re-identified as such*****) to the switch
- Ground the switch.

- Set up the switch so it will read “OFF” when the toggle is in the down position.



Single Pole Switch by Clifford Rutherford are licensed under CC BY 4.0

***Switch Loop**

It is very common for residential electricians to run the power source to the lighting outlet first and then to run a two-wire cable to the single-pole switching location. When employing a switch loop, use the white wire as an ungrounded conductor and identify it as such. It is required that the white conductor be identified at both ends as a hot conductor. Use black electrical tape, although another color tape (like red or blue) may also be used, or a permanent marker to mark the conductor. The mark must completely encircle the conductor.

Three-Way Switch- Connects three conductors to the switch to control a light fixture or receptacle from two locations, such as at the top and bottom of a stairway. Three and four-way switches do not have On/Off markings on them. Beginning electricians and maintenance technicians often find the connections for three-way switches confusing. Learning some basic rules can make the process much easier.

Rules For Three-Way Switches

- Three-way switches must always be installed in pairs.
- A three-wire cable must always be installed between the two three-way switches.
- When wiring with conduit, three separate wires must be pulled into the conduit between the two three-way switches.

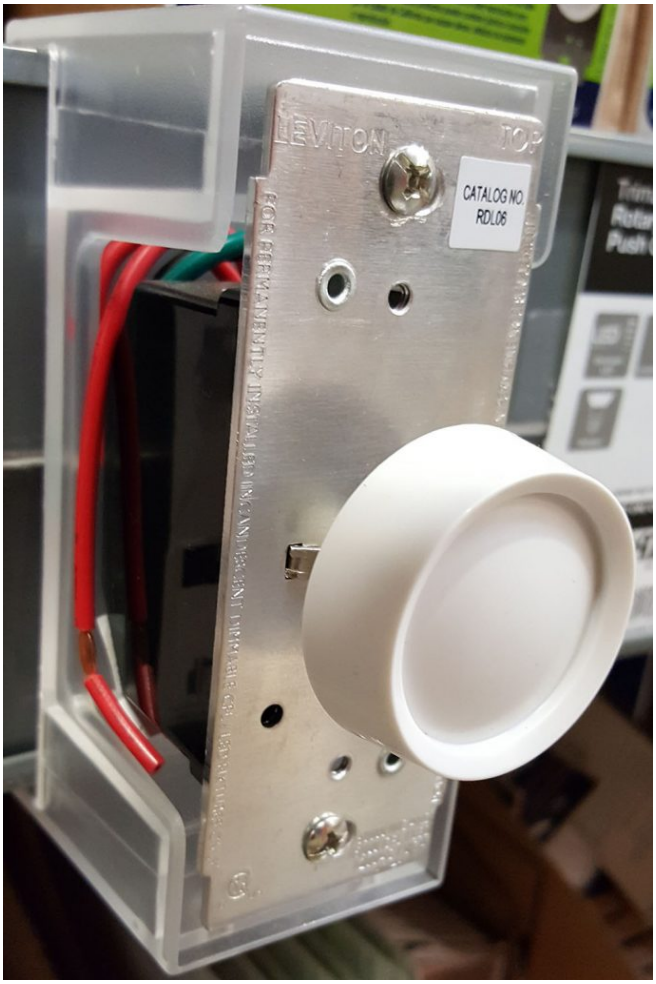
- The black colored “common” terminal on a three-way switch should always have a black insulated wire attached to it.
  - One three-way switch will have a black “hot” feed conductor attached to it.
  - The other three-way switch will have the black insulated conductor that will be going to the lighting load attached to it.
- Connect the two traveler conductors to the two brass colored “traveler” terminals and the conductor that provides power.
- When using nonmetallic sheathed cable:
  - When the power source feed is brought to the first three-way switch, the traveler wires that interconnect the traveler terminals of both switches will be black and red.
  - When the power source feed is brought to the lighting outlet first, the traveler wires will be red and white.
    - Re-identify the white traveler conductors with black tape at each switch location.
- Ground the switch.

Four-Way Switch- Four-way switches have four conductors connected to them. Four-way switches are used in 120-volt circuits to control a lighting load from three or more locations, such as in a room with three doorways that calls for switches controlling the room lighting to be located at each doorway. They are used in conjunction with two three-way switches. Two conductors will come from one three-wire cable and two conductors will come from a second three-wire cable.

- Connect the conductors from one cable to the two screw terminals that are the same color (traveler terminal screws).
- Connect the remaining two conductors to the two screw terminals that are a different color (traveler terminal screws).

Double-Pole Switch- These switches are used on 240-volt circuits to control a load from one location (ex: electric water heater). The double-pole switch has four terminals on it and, at first glance, looks like a four-way switch. Unlike a four-way (or three-way) switch, the toggle on the double-pole switch does have the words “ON” and “OFF” written on it. This means that like a single-pole switch, there is a correct mounting position for the switch so when it is “ON”, the toggle will indicate it. The double-pole switch also has markings that usually indicate the “load” and the “line” sides of the switch. Usually the “line” set of terminals is colored black and the “load” set of terminals is colored a brass or bronze.

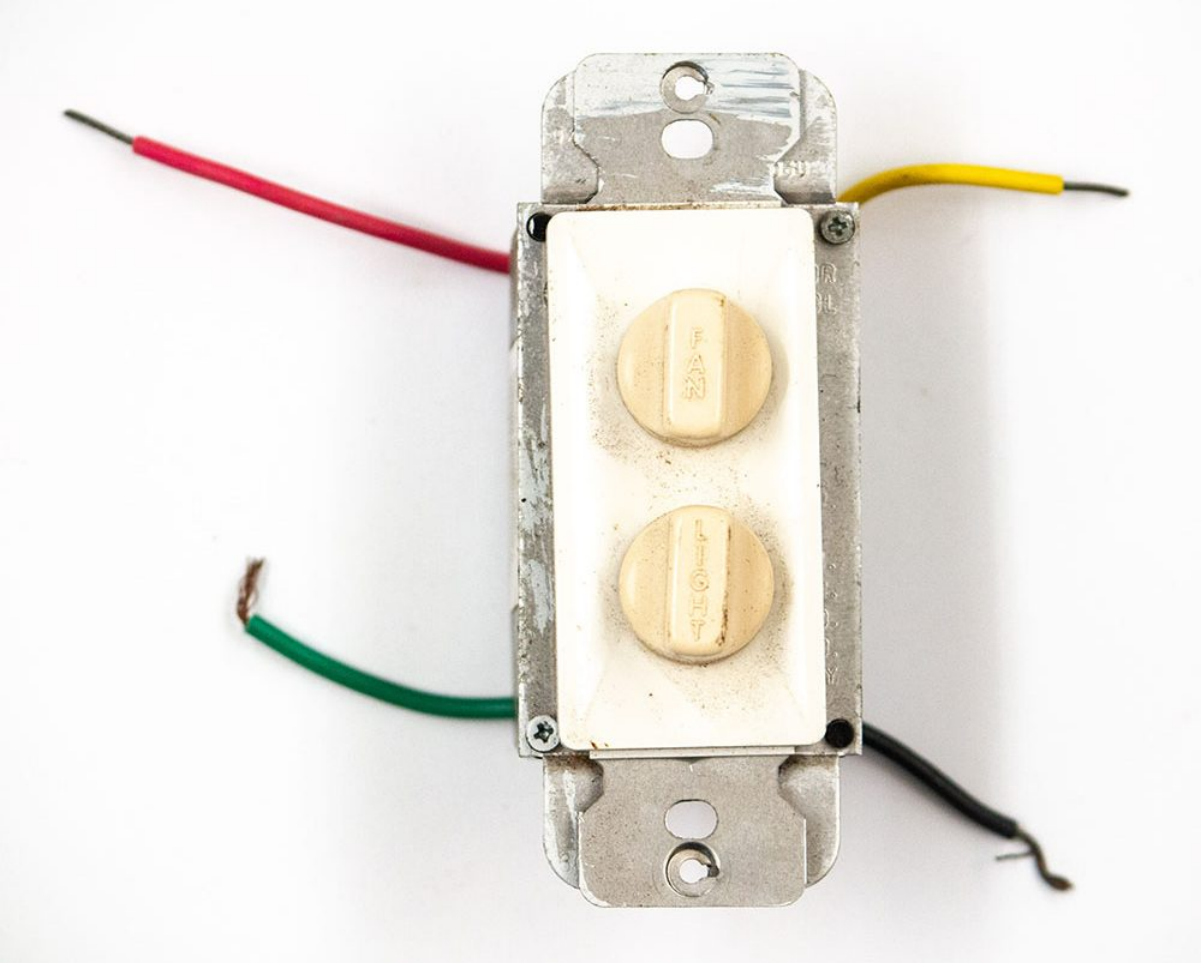
Dimmer Switches- are used to brighten or dim a lighting fixture’s lamps. Found in both a singlepole and a three-way configurations, both are available with either a rotating knob style or sliding
switch that varies the resistance in the circuit. Dimmer switches differ from regular switches in that they do not have terminal screws, but instead have colored insulated pigtail wires coming off the switch installed by the manufacturer. To install a dimmer switch, connect the dimmer switch pigtails to the appropriate circuit conductor with a wirenut. Single-pole or three-way dimmer switches are connected in a switching circuits exactly as regular single pole and three-way switches.



Slide Dimmer & Rotary Dimmer by Clifford and Rosemary Rutherford are licensed under CC BY 4.0

Combination Devices

Combination devices have a combination of two devices, both of which are mounted on the same strap. There could be two single-pole switches, a single-pole switch and a three-way switch, a single-pole switch and a receptacle, or a single-pole switch with an indicator light.



Combination Switch by Gwen Arkin are licensed under CC BY 4.0

10.1.7: Outdoor Wiring Considerations

Wiring for Outdoors

Outdoor electrical wiring in residential situations includes installing the wiring and equipment for lighting and power equipment located outside of the house. Wiring may be installed overhead or underground. Most underground receptacle and lighting circuits installed in residential wiring are done using Type UF (Underground Feeder) Cable. Type UF Cable must be physically marked as underground feeder cable and is available from 14 AWG through 4/0 AWG copper and from 12 AWG through 4/0 aluminum. Type UF can be used outdoors in direct exposure to the sun only if listed as being sunlight-resistant with a sunlight-resistant marking on the cable sheathing. It can be buried directly in the ground or installed according to the same rules as for Nonmetallic Sheathed Cable when used as an interior wiring method.

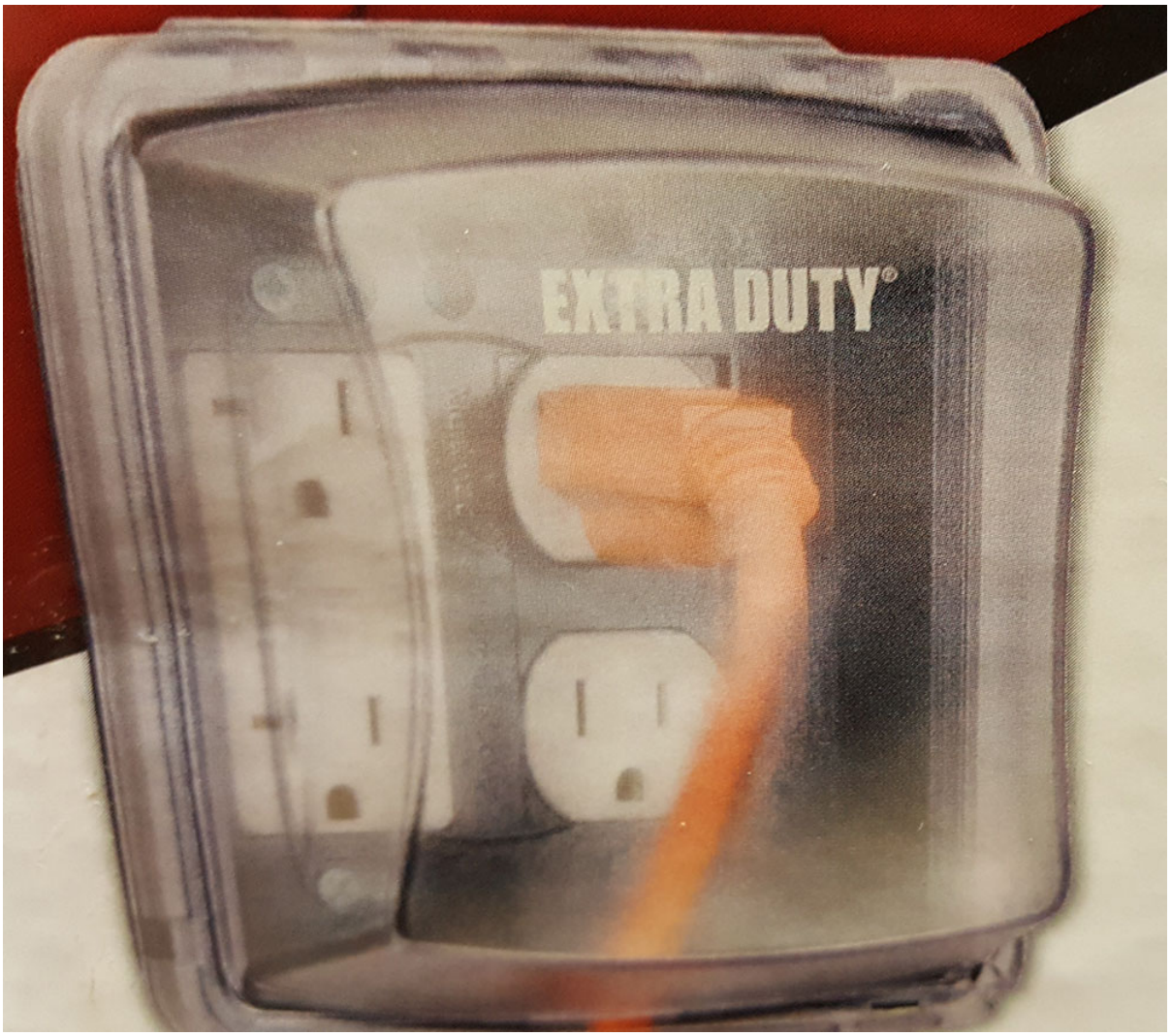
Any wiring installed in an underground conduit must have a ‘W’ in its insulation designation, such as “THWN” or “XHHW”. The ‘W’ means that the conductor insulation is suitable for installation in a wet location. Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC) is used for underground conduit installation with these wires. Minimum burial depths for both Type UF Cable and for any of the conduit wiring methods can be found in the NEC® code book.

Outdoor Receptacles

Receptacle outlets located outdoors must be installed in weatherproof enclosures. The electrical boxes are usually made of metal and are often called a “Bell Box”. They typically have threaded openings or hubs that allow attachment to the box with conduit or a cable connector. These boxes come from the factory with a few threaded plugs that are used to seal any unused threaded openings to make the box truly weatherproof. Outdoor boxes can be mounted on the surface of an outside wall or on some other structural support such as a wooden post rising from the ground. They are often installed with underground wiring and supported by conduits coming up out of the ground.

Bell Box by Clifford & Rosemary Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

When a receptacle is installed outdoors, the enclosure and cover combination must maintain its weatherproof characteristics whether a cord plug is inserted into the receptacle or not. This is accomplished by installing a self-closing cover that is deep enough to also cover the attached plug cap on a cord. PVC boxes can also be used for outdoor applications when secured with an approved weatherproof or weather resistant cover. The receptacle must be a listed and marked weather-resistant (WR) type.



Outdoor Receptacle Cover by Clifford & Rosemary Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Outdoor Lighting

Outdoor lighting can be mounted on the side of building structures, on poles, or even on trees. According to codes, any luminaire (lighting fixture) installed outdoors and exposed to the weather must be listed as suitable for the location and have a label with a marking that states “Suitable for Wet Locations”. If a luminaire is to be installed under a canopy or under an open porch, it is considered a “damp” location and the fixture only needs a label that states “Suitable for Damp Locations.”

Although codes allow outdoor lighting fixtures to be mounted on trees, they also mandate that overhead conductor spans cannot be supported by trees or other living or dead vegetation. This means that when installing wiring to a tree-mounted lighting fixture, an underground wiring method must be used between each tree.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Plumbing Systems

11.1: Piping and Fittings

Pipes

Installing, maintaining, and troubleshooting plumbing systems requires specific knowledge of industry standardized measurements, construction codes, and specialized components of plumbing systems. While locally adopted plumbing codes apply to these systems and components, manufacturer installation and use instructions should be followed. Many common plumbing parts and materials like pipes and fittings do not come with instructions and should be sized and installed to comply with locally adopted plumbing and building codes.

A pipe or fitting's ability to hold pressure, survive hot or cold temperatures, and endure natural elements is limited by it's chemical composition, wall strength, and integrity of the sealing method used to join individual components. Schedule is the term used in referring to "plastic" (PVC, ABS, CPVC) pipe's wall thickness, with lower numbers representing thinner walled pipes. The most common sizes used in residential construction are Schedule 40 (thinner wall used in drain, waste and vent applications) and Schedule 80 (thicker wall used in pressurized water applications). Several material types are approved for use in piping system that serve different purposes in a complete plumbing system to include water supply, and waste, drain and vent (DWV). The following table indicates the type of plumbing system that various types of piping are generally allowed in residential and light commercial construction:

Common Material Types	Supply	Waste	Drain	Vent
Copper	Yes	No	No	No
PEX	Yes	No	No	No
PVC	Yes*	Yes	Yes	Yes
CPVC	Yes**	No	No	No
ABS	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Cast Iron	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
No-hub	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Galvanized Pipe	Yes	No	No	No
Black Iron Pipe***	No	No	No	No

Fittings

Fitting are used to join and redirect pipes and components to form complete plumbing systems. Due to the variety of designs of plumbing system components, fittings also facilitate adaptations from one size diameter of pipe or fitting to another. While many styles of fittings are used in most all types of systems, plumbing codes only allow some fittings to be used in particular type of plumbing system (supply or DWV) and have strict requirements as to how they are to be incorporated into the system (ex: compression fittings and unions should never be used inside of walls).

Fitting Terminology

National Pipe Thread (NPT)	American standard thread used in pluming and piping systems. It may also be referred to as **MPT** or **MNPT** for male external threads and **FPT** or **FNPT** for female internal threads. A thread sealant of some type should always be used to obtain a leak free seal (except for NPTF).

National Pipe Thread (NPT)	American standard thread used in pluming and piping systems. It may also be referred to as **MPT** or **MNPT** for male external threads and **FPT** or **FNPT** for female internal threads. A thread sealant of some type should always be used to obtain a leak free seal (except for NPTF).
Iron Pipe Size (IPS)	Older pipe sizing system still in use by some industries, including PVC pipe manufacturers.
Slip fittings	Slip fittings require a male component with a particular outside diameter to be joined with a female component with a similarly sized inside diameter either by solvent, glue, or, when using copper components, soldering.
Couplings	Couplings are designed to join two pipes of equal diameter. Couplings can be slip-to-slip or female thread to female thread.
Bushings	This fitting allows a pipe or fitting to be reduced to a smaller size and are made to be inserted into a pipe, inside slip, or female thread. Bushings outside diameter can be male thread or male slip with the inside diameter, being of the same style (slip or thread) as the outside, dictating the size the piping system is reduced to.
Adapters	Similar to bushings, adapters are used to convert pipes and fittings from one size to another. Unlike bushings, adapters can allow for conversion from slip to thread applications an, in some cases, one piping material type to another.
Elbows	Elbows normally create a 90° or 45° change in direction of a piping system. 22-1/2° fittings are also available for some piping systems. Depending on the material, elbows come in female slip-to-female slip, female slip-to-female slip, slip-to-female thread, slip-to-male thread. PVC and Copper female slip-to-male slip elbows are referred to as street elbows and they are used for close turns and swivel to fit connections.
Tees	Tees connect pipes at 90 degree angles divide the flow of a single line into two or more. Tees can also be used to reduce the size of a branch feeding off of a main line. Tees are normally fitted with female threads in each direction.

National Pipe Thread (NPT)	American standard thread used in pluming and piping systems. It may also be referred to as **MPT** or **MNPT** for male external threads and **FPT** or **FNPT** for female internal threads. A thread sealant of some type should always be used to obtain a leak free seal (except for NPTF).
Plugs	Plugs are male thread or male slip and designed to seal off unused plumbing system branches or unused component outlets.
Caps	Caps, like plugs, are designed to seal off unused plumbing system branches or unused component outlets, but have female slip fittings or threads.
Unions	Unions facilitate the removal and repair of system components and consist of one fitting having a swivel nut which attaches to the other fitting which has a male threaded adapter with a flange or compression type sea
National Pipe Thread (NPT)	American standard thread used in pluming and piping systems. It may also be referred to as **MPT** or **MNPT** for male external threads and **FPT** or **FNPT** for female internal threads. A thread sealant of some type should always be used to obtain a leak free seal (except for NPTF).
Compression fittings	Compression fittings are sometimes used to install plumbing system components and make quick repairs on smooth outside diameter pipes like PVC and copper. Compression fittings require that a soft brass metal sleeve in copper applications, and Teflon or pliable washer in PVC applications, is compressed around the piping material by an adjustment nut to seal the fitting.
Wyes	Wyes are Y-shaped fittings that allow one pipe to be joined to another at a 45 degree angle. Wyes are not used in water supply systems, but are common in DWV systems where hard turns slow the flow of waste.
Tee-Wyes	Tee-Wyes are similar to standard wyes but provide an additional 45 degree branch.

National Pipe Thread (NPT)	American standard thread used in pluming and piping systems. It may also be referred to as **MPT** or **MNPT** for male external threads and **FPT** or **FNPT** for female internal threads. A thread sealant of some type should always be used to obtain a leak free seal (except for NPTF).
Sanitary Tees	Sanitary Tees should be used when connecting a horizontal run, such as a waste arm to a vent stack or vertical riser. They are only used to go from the horizontal to vertical plane.
Clean-Outs	Clean-Outs are threaded plugged access points in a DWV system used for clearing clogged lines with augers and inspecting DWV systems with cameras. Plumbing system codes dictate how many clean-outs should be in a waste system by the length of run and the amount of turns in the system.

Fitting	Supply	Waste	Drain	Vent
Coupler	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
90 degree elbow or offset	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
90 degree sweep	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
45 degree elbow or offset	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
45 degree sweep	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Tee	Yes	No	No	Yes
Tee-Wye	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Sanitary Tee	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Adapter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bushing	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
No-hub	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Nominal Pipe Size	Outside Diameter	Wall Thick. (Sch 40)	Wt. Per Ft. (Sch 40)	Wall Thick. (Sch 80)	Wt. Per Ft. (Sch 80)
1/8	0.405	0.068	0.245	0.095	0.315
1/4	0.540	0.088	0.425	0.119	0.535
3/8	0.675	0.091	0.568	0.126	0.739

Nominal Pipe Size	Outside Diameter	Wall Thick. (Sch 40)	Wt. Per Ft. (Sch 40)	Wall Thick. (Sch 80)	Wt. Per Ft. (Sch 80)
1/2	0.840	0.109	0.851	0.147	1.088
3/4	1.050	0.113	1.131	0.154	1.474
1	1.315	0.133	1.679	0.179	2.172
1-1/4	1.660	0.140	2.273	0.191	2.997
1-1/2	1.900	0.145	2.718	0.200	3.631
2	2.375	0.154	3.653	0.218	5.022
2-1/2	2.875	0.203	5.793	0.275	7.661
3	3.500	0.216	7.576	0.300	10.250
3-1/2	4.000	0.226	9.109	0.318	12.510
4	4.500	0.237	10.790	0.337	14.980
5	5.563	0.258	14.620	0.375	20.780
6	6.625	0.280	18.970	0.432	28.570
8	8.625	0.322	28.550	0.500	43.390
10	10.750	0.365	40.480	0.500	54.740
12	12.750	0.375	49.560	0.500	65.420

Solvent Cleaners, Primers, & Cements or Glues

The use of cleaners, primers, and glues is specific to slip fitting applications and the chemical composition of the "plastic" piping being used. Chemical resistant gloves should be worn when using these chemical process adhesives as prolonged skin contact can result in irritation or chemical burn. Latex and vinyl gloves are not chemically resistant when used with some solvents, primers, and glues.

Always consult manufacture directions for set times of cements and glues before pressurizing any glued plumbing assembly. When assembling fittings and pipes, cleaners, primers and glues should be swabbed over the entire joint surface of both the male and female slip fitting. Although manufacturer directions may vary, in most cases a cleaner should be used, followed by a primer and then the solvent cement. Additionally, after application of the primer, the solvent cement should be applied immediately before the primer dries. Before the glue begins to set up, the male pipe or fitting is inserted fully into the female socket with a slight twisting motion. It is important to hold the joint firmly together until an initial setting of the glue is achieved, as glued fittings have a tendency to push apart as the chemical heats and expands.

Color and Material

Most manufacturers of these chemically reactive products have adopted colors in their products that identify the composition of material it is to be used with.

[table id=11 /]

Primers and Cleaners (Clear to Purple)		Formulated to remove contaminates and chemically etch plastic piping. While some cleaners are clear, purple tinted primer stains white PVC enabling the user to ensure that all surfaces requiring glue are properly cleaned and etched.
ABS Cement (Black)		For ABS piping systems only. Note that primers should NOT be used for ABS pipe and that cleaner should be used in its place.

Wet-or Dry (Rain-or-Shine™) Cement (Blue)		For PVC in damp applications. However, care should be used to keep fittings as dry as possible as these types of glues do not always set well if assembly is submerged.
CPVC Cement (Orange)		Specially formulated to only be used with CPVC products. CPVC piping and fittings should only be joined to other types of products with threaded fittings.
Transition Cement (Green)		Used to join ABS to PVC. Although not a common practice, some special circumstance and repair applications may require these two materials to be joined.
All Purpose Cement (Clear)		Used with PVC, ABS, and CPVC, but should never be used to join two of the different types together.

Color Blocks by Jonathan Kevan is licensed under CC BY 4.0

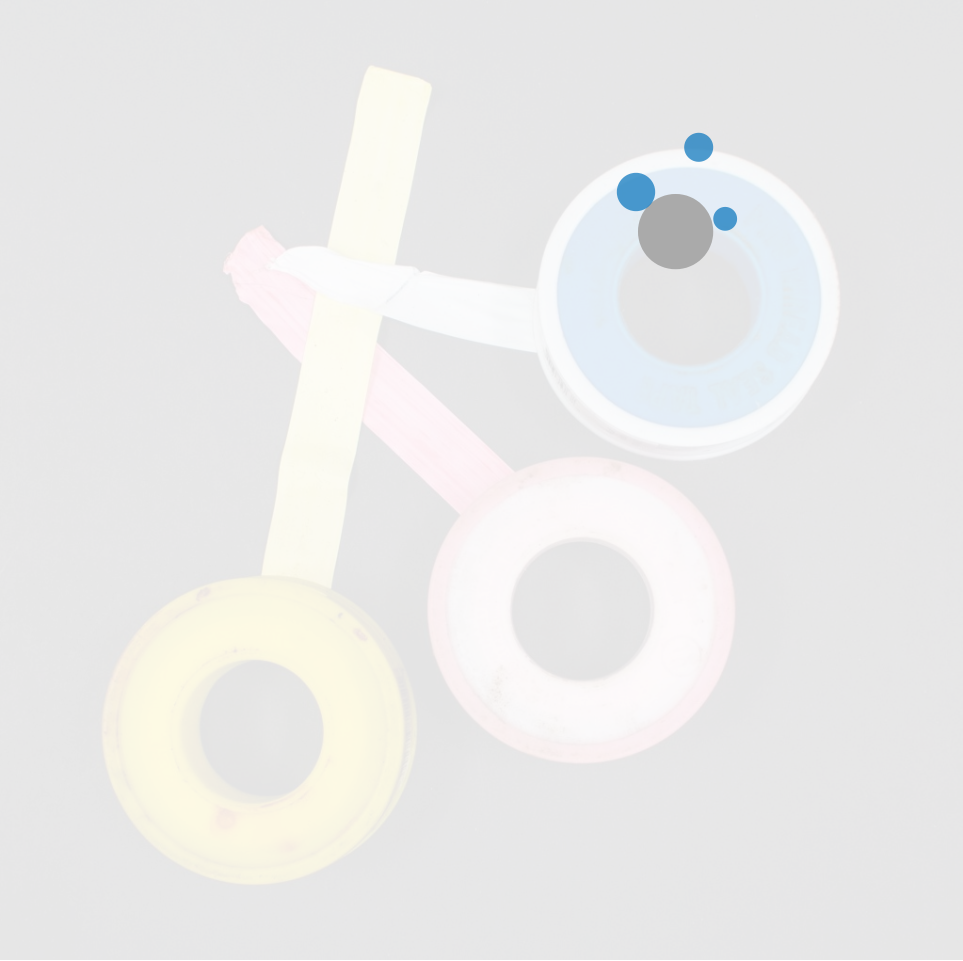
Difference Between PVC Cement Types & Primer

Differences Between CPVC, DWV PVC, Schedule 40 PVC, and Schedule 80 PVC

Threaded Pipe Fitting Assembly

Most pipe threads by themselves are not sufficient to create a complete seal in pressurized piping systems.

Thread Tape



Teflon Tapes by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

IPS and NPT pipe threads require Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) tape (Teflon™ by Chemours) to be applied to the male threads of fittings in order to obtain a complete seal. PTFE tape is available in widths of 1/2″, 3/4″ and 1″ and different weights or thicknesses (white-standard duty, pink-high density). The standard duty tape should be wrapped completely and evenly across the male threads approximately three to four times in the direction the threads turn to tighten the fitting. The easiest way to accomplish this is to place the tape roll in the left hand with the tape feeding toward the right from the bottom. While holding the male fitting with the right hand, place the end of the tape across the top of the fitting and turn the fitting clockwise. After securing the first 1 to 1-1/2 wraps, gently stretch the tape, continuing to turn while overlapping layers up and down the threads until 3 to four complete wraps are achieved evenly across the length of the male threads. Pull the tape firmly to break and thread male fitting into female fitting, securing with an appropriate wrench.

Standard or high density PTFE thread pipe cannot, by codes, be used for natural gas and propane applications. A chemically resistant yellow version is used for these flammable gas systems.

Pipe Dope

Pipe Dope by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

As with thread tape, pipe dope comes in PTFE and other compositions designed for water lines and for gas lines. While some people use pipe dope on top of thread tape but many manufactures claim that the is minimal or no benefit to using both products simultaneously. Some pipe dopes cannot be used on plastic piping, be sure to check manufacturer directions prior to use. Pipe dope is applied with a brush to the male threads of a piping joint and then the pipe is tightened into the female fitting and secured with an appropriate wrench.

Copper Pipe Fitting and Soldering

Due to the ever rising cost of copper material, soldering of copper pipes and fittings in residential construction is rapidly becoming obsolete as PEX flexible water supply tubing and similar solderless products, that use crimping system technologies, are being recognized and approved for installation by industry codes. However, plumbers and building maintenance technicians should

always be prepared to use soldering techniques to install and repair copper supply lines of all sizes in commercial and older residential systems.

Simple Steps for Soldering

1. Clean the pipe well.
2. Clean the fitting well.
3. Apply an even coat of flux.
4. Don’t get the fitting too hot.

How to Solder Pipe

11.2: Domestic Water Service

Potable Water

Often referred to as drinking water or domestic water, **potable water** is water that is considered to be safe for human consumption. Plumbers and maintenance technicians should always be aware of the potential for contamination of potable water systems and guard against it when installing, opening, and repairing these vulnerable systems.

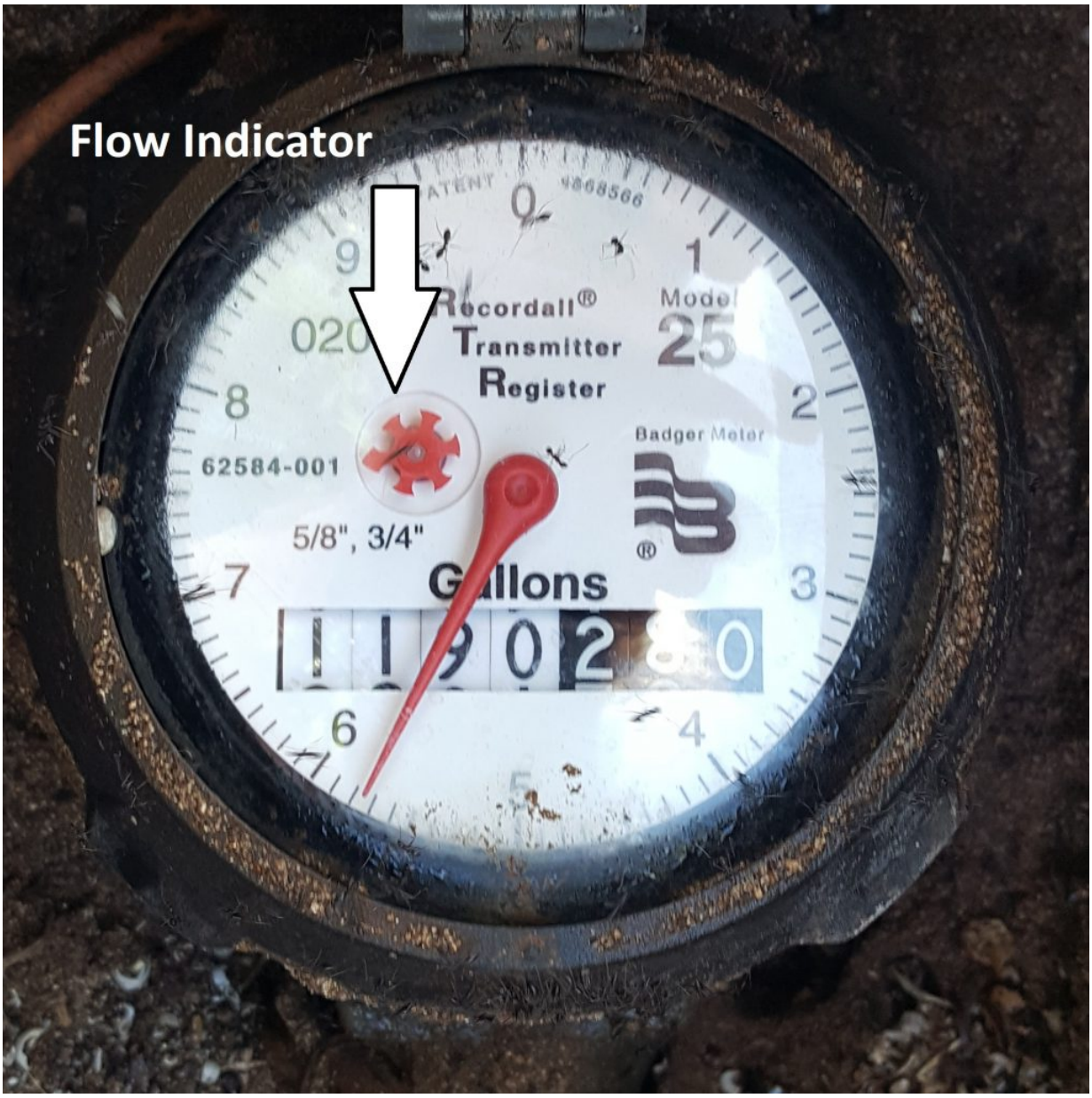
Plumbing codes are very specific about maintaining the integrity of potable water systems to be free of harmful contaminants to protect the health and well being of individuals that rely on them. If a water service is installed in the same trench as a drain or sewer, the possibility of back-flow could occur. To protect against this, codes regulate the installation of a water service in the same trench with or within a certain distance of waste system piping. Most codes require that a water service installed at the same elevation as a sewer must be separated from the sewer by at least 5’ of undisturbed or compacted soil (This code often dictates that a separate trench is to be excavated). Additionally, lead-free regulations now affect how brass, bronze, copper, and other metal fittings and components are made and the solders that are used to assemble some of them.

Specialty Tools

Specialty tools often make tasks easier to perform and there is no shortage of specialty tools in the plumbing field. Many are specific to a particular manufacturer, while other perform functions that are relative to the plumbing field.

Water Meters

Water meters are used by municipal water systems to monitor and record water usage for billing purposes. Most in-ground water meters are secured in a meter box that requires a specially shaped forged key (available at specialty plumbing supply vendors) to open. Every water meter has a direction of flow and an arrow indicating which side is the incoming or outgoing connection. A municipal shut-off valve located before the meter (inlet side) normally has a rectangular shaped lock-out device that can be turned on or off with a fitted T-handle device or open end wrench. Turning this valve to the off position allows for the water supply to the entire property the meter services to be cut off and for the meter to be removed or serviced. A ball or gate valve should be installed in a valve box located outside of the meter box on the outlet side for customers or service technicians to access in order to shut off water service in the event of an emergency.



Water Meter by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Checking for Leaks With a Residential Water Meter:

Be sure all faucets and hose bibs in the residence are turned off.

Ensure that nobody will be flushing the toilets.

Turn off supply line to refrigerator ice makers and water dispensers.

Watch to see if the small flow indicator dial on the meter is turning.

- If the indicator appears to be stopped, make a temporary marking that indicates the position of the flow indicator dial and wait 5 minutes to see if the indicator moves.
- If the indicator is turning on initial inspection, or has moved within 5 minutes of being marked at a fixed position, and nobody in the residence is using the water:
  - Turn off supply water to any water features one at a time including: spas, swimming pools, and ponds; checking the flow indicator between each one. If the indicator on the meter ceases to turn after turning off a particular water feature, check the

supply valve/float valve or filling system of that feature for leaks.

- Turn off angle stops at toilets one at a time and check the water meter flow indicator to see if it has stopped moving between turning off the supply at each toilet. If the indicator ceases to turn after turning off a particular toilet's angle stop, follow procedures for troubleshooting toilet fill and flush valves in that toilet.

If all of these procedures have been performed and the flow indicator dial continues to turn, it is possible that there is an underground, under-slab, or in-wall leak. As in-wall leaks are usually apparent, it is more likely that leak would be in the ground or under-slab and a professional licensed plumber should be consulted.

Residential Piping

Rough-in water supply piping is usually installed after the completion of the drainage and vent piping because the water piping system consumes less space in walls and ceilings. The drainage and piping must be installed with specific fittings and in certain positions to allow the water to flow by gravity, and water supply system installation requirements are less rigid than drain, waste, and vent systems.

System Pipe Size Requirements

While the International Plumbing Code (IPC) and the Uniform Plumbing Code (UPC) differ slightly in their pipe sizing allowances, both use similar criteria for the sizing of piping systems. The sizing of an entire system is established based on the quantity and type of fixtures being served, and designed based on the maximum GPM or per flushing cycle of a particular fixture and then calculated as per all the fixtures.

Fixture	UPC Smallest Size	IPC Smallest Size
Bathtub	1/2"	1/2"
Large Capacity Bathtub	Not Identified	1/2"
Bathtub 3/4" Fill Valve	3/4"	Not Identified
Bidet	1/2"	3/8"
Dishwasher	1/2"	1/2"
Hose Faucet	1/2"	1/2"
Kitchen Sink	1/2"	3/8"
Laundry Sink	1/2"	3/8"
Lavatory Sink	1/2"	3/8"
Single Shower Head	1/2"	3/8"
Toilet	1/2"	3/8"

11.3: Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV)

Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) systems can be complex and extensive as pipe routes are a result of determining fixture locations, fixture requirements, relative codes, construction obstacles, and company installation standards. Understanding of the basic layout of these systems can be crutial to plumbers and maintenance technicians when diagnosing and clearing blockages, and troubleshooting other drain and sewer abnormalities.

DWV Terminology

Building Sewer

A building sewer is the main pipe used to transport sewage and wastewater from a DWV system to a point of disposal, or termination (ex. a municipal sewer line).

Clean-Outs

The start of a building sewer is typically where a clean-out is installed with its connection to the building drain. Clean-outs are installed in various locations throughout a system and the maximum distances are found in a code books, they typically cannot be more than 100’ apart. All codes dictate that the base of every stack and the transition from a building drain and building sewer must have a clean-out installed. Sizing is based on a clean-out being the same size as the pipe when serving a stack, building drain, and building sewer, but some codes allow exceptions for pipe sizes larger than 4”.

Clean-Out Key by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Building Drain

The building drain is the lowest horizontal portion of a drainage system and receives discharge from waste stacks and horizontal branches. Many codes state that it must extend at least 2’-6”and a maximum of 10’-0” from the exterior of the building.

Waste Stack

The waste stack is the main vertical pipe that starts with its connection at the building drain and terminates with its connection to the stack vent. It receives discharge from all horizontal branches and must have a clean-out at its base.

Stack Vent

The vent for the waste stack is known as the stack vent and begins at the highest branch connection to the waste stack. It is a dry piping system that typically extends through the roof, but can connect with the vent stack prior to terminating to open air.

Vent Stack

A vent stack is sized based on numerous factors including the total discharge load of a system and the length it travels. The vent stack can transition horizontally without requiring a relief vent. Like all horizontal vents, it must have adequate slope to eliminate

moisture from settling and obstructing its airway. A clean-out is most often required to be installed at its base by plumbing and building codes .

Fixture Drain

The fixture drain serves a single fixture trap and is sized based on the particular fixture load. Most codes allow a removable joint of a trap assembly to act as a clean-out for a fixture drain. A floor drain or shower drain with a removable strainer can also serve as a clean-out for a fixture drain. Though a drain cannot be smaller than 1 -1/4” diameter, most codes dictate that the smallest drain size buried below ground is 2” diameter.

Fixture Branch

The fixture branch is a drainpipe that connects more than one fixture drain to a horizontal branch or major segment of a DWV system.

Horizontal Branch

A horizontal branch is a drainpipe that connects horizontally to a major segment of a DWV system. It can either connect to a waste stack or building drain. It connects more than one fixture drain or a fixture branch to a main segment of DWV system.

Individual Vent

Individual vents serve one fixture trap and are a vertical extension of a drain. They must be at least half the diameter of the drain they serve, but no smaller than 1 -1/4”.

Branch Vent

The branch vent serves as a vent for a horizontal branch and connects to the a vent stack or a stack vent. A branch vent is sized based on the size of the horizontal branch, the drainage load of the horizontal branch, and the distance it travels.

Circuit Vent

A circuit vent, mainly used in commercial applications, is a branch vent that is not typical with other standard branch vent types and has specific code regulations. Single-family residential construction typically does not use “battery” configurations designed for institutional style multiple fixture applications due to the minimal number of fixtures located within one room.

Loop Vent

The loop vent is a circuit vent that is installed on a top floor of a building or highest branch. All sizing and code regulations are the same as those for a circuit vent.

Relief Vent

A relief vent is required when a waste stack transitions from vertical to horizontal. The most common relief vent is one serving a battery of fixtures. A relief vent serving a battery of fixtures is sized based on being half the diameter of the horizontal branch, but as with all other vents, it cannot be less than 1 -1/4”.

Trap

Every plumbing fixture connected to a drainage system must be protected by a fitting or device that serves as a protective water seal to prevent harmful sewer gas from entering an occupied space. This device is called a trap. A **p-trap** gets its name from its appearance, which resembles the letter P, and is installed receiving the outlet flow of waste water from a fixture. P-traps are available in a variety of styles, which include one-piece and two-piece designs and are designed to serve wall entry connections to the branch drain pipe, whereas **S-traps** are designed to serve floor entry connections to the drain pipe. The joints of a trap and it’s connections to the drain and fixture it serves are commonly assembled with compression style fittings similar to a union.

P-Trap by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Trap Adapter

A slip-joint p-trap is tubular size and has a smaller outside diameter than the connecting DWV pipe. The fitting for connecting tubular sizes to DWV pipe sizes is referred to as a trap adapter and sometimes also called a desanco. A trap adapter is usually installed during the fixture installation phase of a project. Cast iron, copper, and galvanized piping systems use brass trap adapters.

Drain Cleaning

If you talk to any plumber or maintenance technician that has long-term experience with clearing clogged sewer and drain lines, you'll be amazed with the stories of the unthinkable items they have cleared or retrieved from DWV systems. Food and human waste, jewelry, silverware; toys, mop heads, and tree roots; beach towels, linen, and personal hygiene products; birds' nests, tree waste and fruit dropped by animals into vent systems, and more, They've seen it all!

Chemical drain cleaners, plungers, hooked flexible plastic extraction devices, and other gadgets can clear clogged p-traps and other clogs in drain lines relatively close to fixtures, some clogs require plumbing and maintenance technicians to use a manual or motorized drum auger to clear them.

How To Unclog a Drain Using a BrassCraft Drum Auger

If a hand or drill operated auger does not clear a clog, a heavy-duty motorized auger may need to be run through a clean-out to clear the obstruction. An assortment of auger heads can be attached to the auger cable to cut through obstructions like human and food waste, tree roots, and other malleable objects, or grab and retrieve objects dropped or flushed down drains.

Easy Rooter Power Drain Cleaner – How To Video

Drain service technicians are sometimes unable to clear obstructions an use a drain and sewer inspection camera to identify what the obstruction is, and with a locator accessory, can pinpoint the location and depth of the obstruction in relation to the piping route including depth.

SeeSnake® MAX rM200 Camera System

11.4: Valves and Prevention Devices

Many devices and faucets are considered to be valves, and numerous valve designs exist and many have multiple uses. Valves and devices installed for potable water must be approved by plumbing codes. Threaded valves and devices typically have female threads, however soldered connections are used for many valves and devices connecting to copper tube and plastic valves and devices are available with solvent welded connections. Backflow devices are installed to protect a potable water system, but an air gap is the only sure method of backflow prevention.

Isolation Valves

Every residential dwelling is required by code to be provided with at least one isolation valve. The valve must be installed in a easily accessible location, so the homeowner can shut off the water supply in case of an emergency or a repair. Most codes require that the minimum size of a residential water service be 3/4". Actual size is based on the number of plumbing fixtures.

Many codes dictate that the main isolation valve for a house and the isolation valve for a water heater be a full port design. A full port valve has the same inside diameter (ID) as the connecting pipe and does not drastically restrict the volume of water that flows through a valve. Some isolation valves and most devices installed in a piping system have a direction of flow and require an installer to connect the piping system knowing the flow direction of the water or gas.

Types of Isolation Valves & Residential Uses

Ball Valve- Water and Gas: Utilizes an internal ball with a hole in its center that creates a flow passageway through the valve, and isolates flow when the ball is rotated 90° from the flow direction. Some types of ball valves are available with a T-handle, but the most common have a lever handle. The internal ball has a vertical stem protruding from the valve body, to which the lever handle is secured with a tightening nut.

Ball Valve – Full Port vs. Standard by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Gate Valve- Water: Utilizes a metal gate (disc) that slides vertically to open and close the valve. A wheel handle that is fixed to a stem raises and lowers the internal gate when manually turned. The handle is turned counterclockwise to open the valve and

clockwise to close the valve. The two basic self-explanatory types of gate valves are a rising stem type and a non-rising stem type.

Gate Valve by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

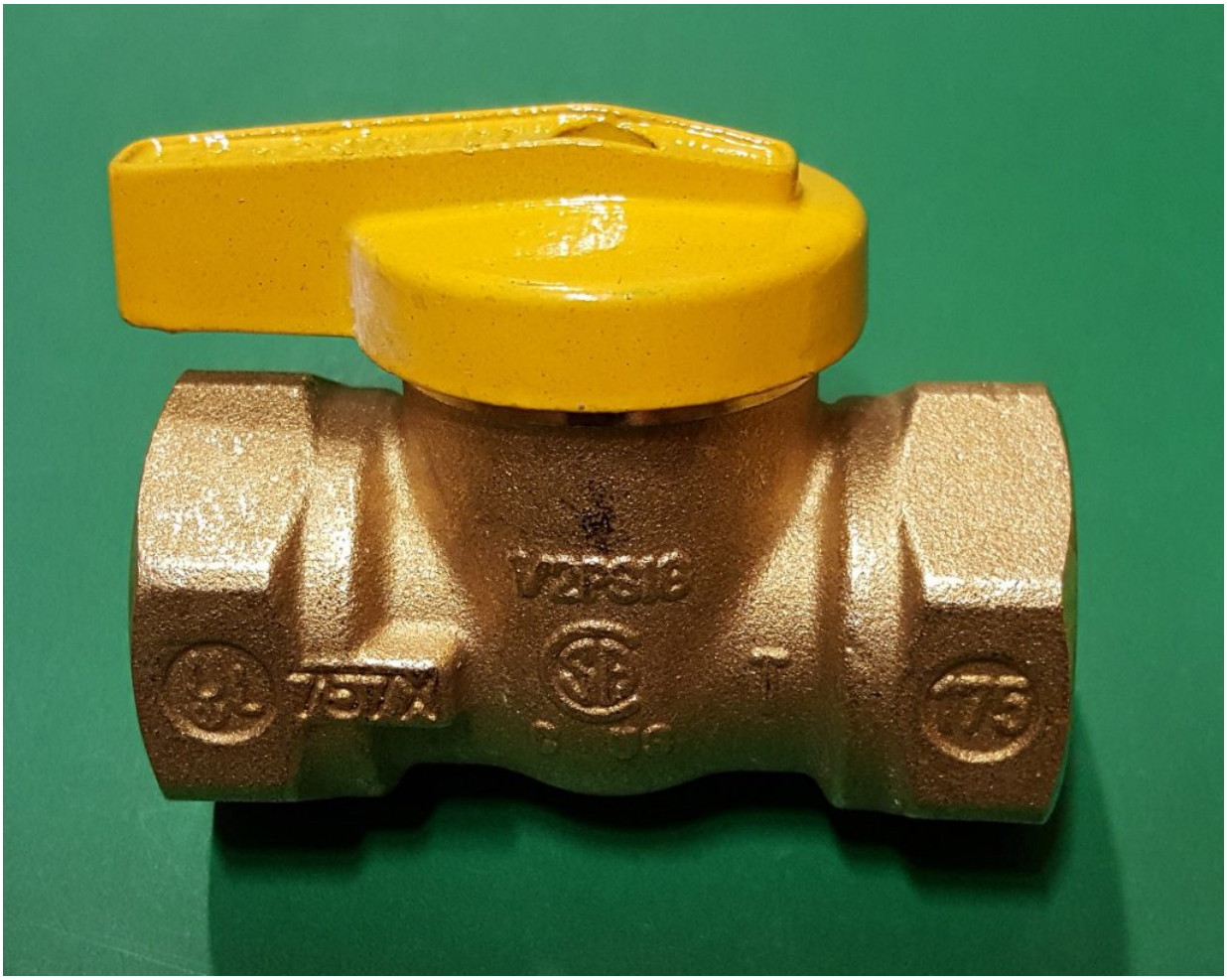
Stop Valve- Water: A valve design that uses a rubber washer to stop the flow of water; it is a directional flow isolation valve. A stop is a restrictive port valve, which is one reason it is no longer widely used in a piping system. A stop is more popular as an individual fixture isolation valve. Commonly installed as the connection between the water distribution system and the fixture tubing connection. Modern fixture supply stops incorporate a 1/4 turn ball valve design in place of a rubber washer assembly to shut off the flow of water. Angled and straight stops for individual fixture isolation are manufactured with chrome and brass finishes. While stops for modern residential applications usually use compression style fittings, older residential and contemporary commercial buildings often are fitted with threaded stops.

Angle Stop by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

How To Install a BrassCraft Compression Valve

Stop and Waste Valve- Water: A stop and waste valve uses the same design as a stop valve to isolate an entire water distribution system, except that it also has a draining feature. When freezing is a concern or the need to drain a small portion of a piping system is required, a stop and waste valve is installed. A stop and waste valve cannot be installed in locations where water could enter the water distribution system through the drain portion. Backflow of non-potable water could enter the drain port while the water distribution system was not under pressure. Some ball valves are available with a waste valve feature.

Gas Cock- Gas: Used for gas distribution systems, a gas cock is used more as a means of isolating entire systems, and utility providers commonly use it for isolating gas meters.. Many ball valve designs for gas isolation are manufactured with a T-handle design, which differs from the typical WOG (water, oil, and gas) ball valve lever handle. Many designs do not have a manual handle such as a lever or wheel handle, but require a wrench to open and close the gas cock.A ball valve specifically designed for gas systems is not rated for use with other systems.



Gas Valve by Rosemary Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Hose End Outlets

Various types of hose outlet connections are used in a plumbing piping system to drain equipment and systems and for water usage. The most common hose outlet designs are known as a hose bibb, wall hydrant, and boiler drain. Hose threads are different than pipe threads, and outlets are 3/4” male hose threads. A hose connection to a piping system is a primary point of entry of contaminants that pollute a water distribution systemas a result of back siphoning also known as backflow. Back siphoning can occur if a hose connected to a water supply pipe is placed into a contaminated source and the water system becomes depressurized.

Types of Hose End Outlets

Boiler Drain: A hose outlet connection that is designed to drain water heater storage tanks is known as a boiler drain. Boilers and water heaters are protected with other approved backflow devices, so most codes do not require a boiler drain to incorporate an integral backflow device in the design.

Boiler Drain by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Hose Bibb: Hose bibbs are designed to allow water flow from a pressurized piping system. Some hose bibbs are similar to a boiler drain, and others are a freeze-proof type. Due to their potential to have contaminants enter the potable water system through them, most hose bibbs are required to be protected with a backflow device.

Hose Bib by Rosemary Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Protective Valves and Devices

Many valves and devices react automatically to temperature and pressure differences or protect potable water systems from the reversal of flow within a piping system. Protective safety valves and devices can also regulate pressure, discharge high pressure, and discharge high temperature to protect system users and other plumbing system components.

Protective Valves and Devices and Their Uses

Pressure Regulator by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Pressure-reducing valve (PRV) or Pressure Regulator: Reduces incoming water pressure. For municipal systems or community systems with a water meter, the incoming water supply pressure to a house depends on the design of the municipal or community system. While the optimal operational pressure for most household water supply systems is 40 to 80 pounds per square inch (psi), many municipal water system supply more than 100 psi or pressure to the residence. Excessive pressure in the water supply to a residence must be regulated to prevent pipes and fittings from bursting, and to protect valve seals and connected household appliances from damage due to high pressure. Codes typically allow the water service piping and hose faucets to exceed 80 psi, but piping that serves fixtures must be reduced to a maximum pressure of 80 psi. Most residential PRV styles have an adjustment range from 25 to 75 psi and are factory set to regulate water pressure to 50 psi and can be adjusted with a bolt/locking nut mechanism that reduces or increases the water pressure to the desired setting. An isolation valve should be installed upstream of PRV devices. PRVs are available in a variety of sizes, but 3/4” is the minimum size for reducing the main piping to a standard residence. To check the actual unregulated water pressure to a building, a simple water pressure gauge can be temporarily fitted with an adapter to an unregulated hose bib or faucet on the exterior of the building. Regulated pressure can be checked by adapting the same gauge to an interior faucet or washing machine supply valve.

Water Pressure Test Gauge by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Relief valve: Relieves excessive pressure or temperature. Protecting a piping system and attached equipment from extreme temperatures and pressures is the responsibility of a relief valve. All relief valves are self-operating and open and close as they react to the various operating conditions of a system. Many dual-use relief valves provide protection against both temperature and pressure. These are known as T&P relief valves. Most codes require that a water heater be equipped with the proper T&P relief valves before being shipped. While valves used for water heaters on conventional and solar water heating incorporate a T&P valve in the tank design of water heaters, valves for pressure relief only are used on solar water heating panels. Pressure only style valves can be differentiated from T&P valves by the absence of a ceramic coated rod that normally protrudes from the T&P inlet.

Pressure Relief Valve by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Check valve: Prevents the reverse flow of water or gas. Although check valves are a form of backflow-prevention devices, a single check valve is not an approved method to protect a potable water system from contamination. Swing and spring style check valves are the two most common installed for residential applications. They are installed to ensure the water, or gas, flows in one direction. The swing check style is more common for most water supply applications. The spring check is used more for gas supply and well pump systems.

Check Valves Swing, Spring & LP by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Vacuum breaker: Prevents back siphoning. When a water distribution system is isolated or loses pressure, a vacuum is created and can allow contaminated water to enter a potable water system. To prevent the possibility of this type of contamination, a vacuum breakers are installed throughout a piping system. Vacuum breakers are available in several forms.

Vacuum relief valve: Prevents back siphoning. Vacuum relief valves are type of vacuum breaker installed in the cold water piping that serves a water heater. This form of backflow prevention operates when sensing a loss of water pressure. It opens to create an atmospheric condition or to equalize the piping system with atmospheric pressure (zero gauge pressure).

Reduced pressure zone valve (RPZ): Prevents backflow. A reduced-pressure zone valve (RPZ) is the most reliable device installed in a plumbing system as a prevention method to stop the backflow of contaminated water from entering a potable water supply system. If water attempts to backflow in the system, it is discharged from the RPZ.

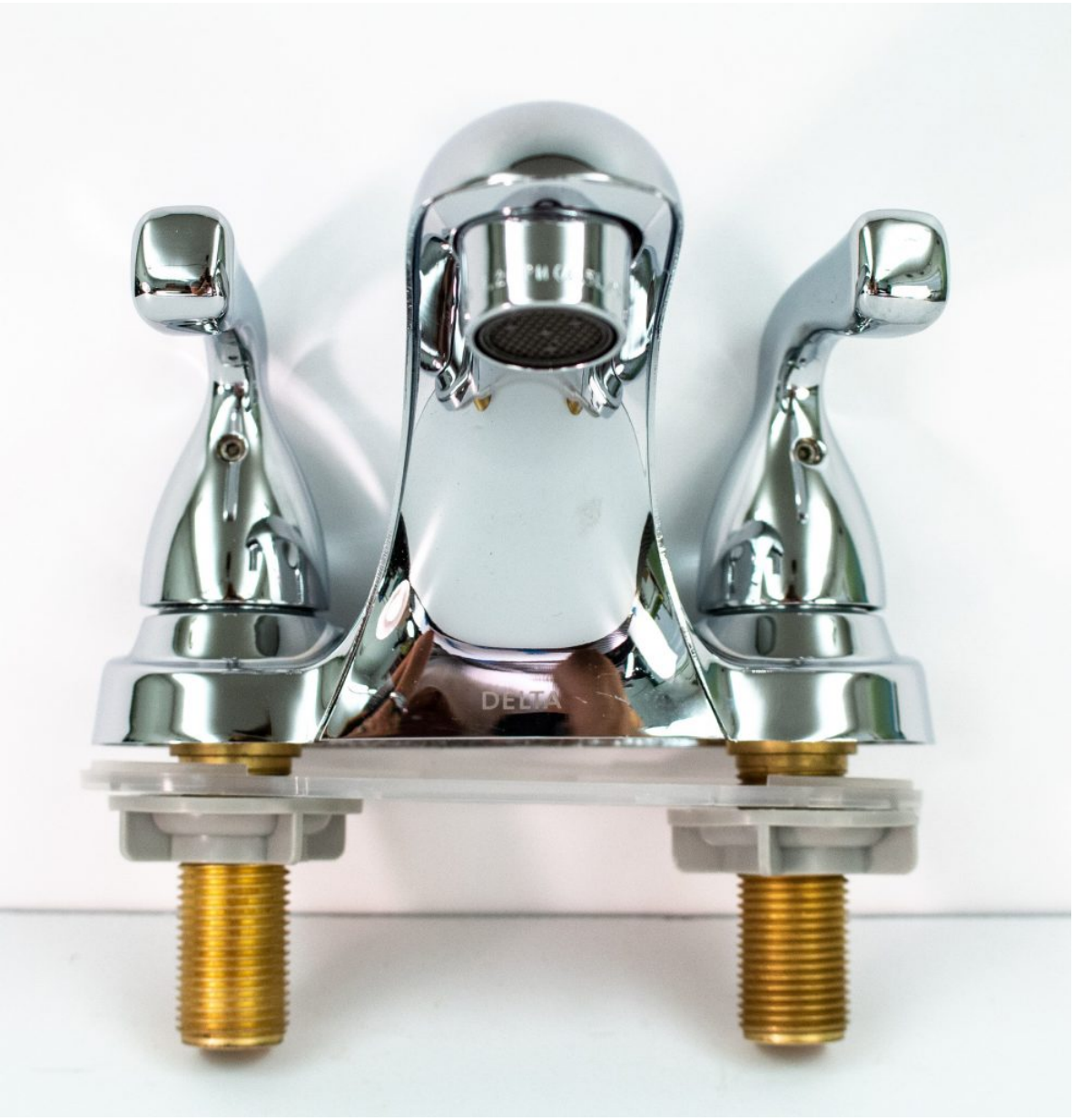
Reduced Pressure Zone Backflow Preventer by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

11.5: Faucets, Fixtures, and Fixture Drains

Plumbing codes require that every house must have at least one toilet, lavatory sink, bathtub or shower, and a kitchen sink. These, and some other items referred to in this chapter, are known as fixtures. Clearances from finished walls and other fixtures are strictly regulated by code and most fixtures are provided with a manufacturer rough-in sheet and installation instructions. Codes regulate the materials that are used to manufacture plumbing fixtures, which must have smooth, impervious surfaces and be defect free. Fixtures that incorporate porcelain enameled surfaces must be capable of withstanding acid without damaging the fixture.

Pay attention to flow rates, volume, and water usage in selecting fixtures. One key aspect of sustainability in plumbing focuses on water conservation. Lavatory faucets and shower heads are two primary focal points of conserving water. The true water saving aspect of a shower is based on duration of each use. A handheld shower can be equipped with mechanisms to turn off the water flow for certain showering activities, such as lathering.

Faucets



Lavatory with 2 handles by Gwen Arkin is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Selecting which manufacturer's product to install is based on cost, quality, and preferred faucet design which includes aesthetics, and functionality. Most master bathrooms and guest bathrooms have more expensive finishes than other bathrooms in a large house. Faucet finishes dictate the finishes used for drain assemblies and bathroom accessories which creates a color theme. Faucet accessories are available to create various themes. Water conservation faucets have aerators that reduce the flow of water to allow only 0.5 gallons per minute as opposed to a 1.0 gallons per minute. Single-handle faucets blend the hot and cold water with the use of one handle; two-handle designs require a user to operate both handles to achieve a desired temperature.

Fixture	Single Handle	Two Handle	Three Handle
Bathtub	Yes	Yes	No
Bidet	No	Yes	No
Kitchen Sink	Yes	Yes	No
Large Capacity or Garden Tub	No	Yes	No
Laundry Sink	No	Yes	No
Lavatory Sink	Yes	Yes	No
Shower	Yes	Yes	No
Tub & Shower	Yes	Yes	*Yes

Faucet Installation

A faucet installed on a sink through a countertop or through a tub platform, instead of through the fixture itself, is considered a deck mounted faucet. All faucets must be designed to prevent backflow of wastewater into the water distribution system and plumbing codes require that a faucet have an air gap or be protected with a vacuum breaker or approved check valve. Most faucets use a tightening nut and flat washer to secure the faucet to a fixture. A bathtub and shower faucet is usually installed during the rough-in phase of construction.

Faucet Water Supply: Connecting a water supply pipe to a faucet varies with the type of faucet and can be accomplished with many common connection methods. Some faucets connect to the water supply with male or female adapters to create a soldered connection, and others use a specially designed 3/8" OD supply tube that connects to the male threads of a faucet.

Fixture	Male Thread	Female Thread	Solder	3/8 Tubing
Bathtub	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Bidet	Yes	No	No	Yes
Kitchen	Yes	No	No	Yes
Large Capacity or Whirlpool Tub	Yes	No	No	No
Laundry	Yes	No	No	No
Lavatory	Yes	No	No	Yes
Shower	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Tub & Shower	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Drain Assemblies

Drain assemblies are purchased based on the specific fixture they serve. Codes dictate the minimum drain size serving a particular fixture, and all fixtures and drain assemblies are manufactured based on minimum code requirements. A trap adapter is installed to connect the stubout pipe to the p-trap outlet. Most codes dictate that the largest size foreign object that can enter a drainage system is 1/2" diameter.

Fixture Types and Assemblies

Toilet

Toilets are also known as water closets. Residential toilets must be self-cleaning during their flushing cycle and have a toilet seat installed. Water conservation fixtures ate rated at 1.6 gallons per flush (gpf) and 1.28 gpf. The most common residential toilet bowl design uses a siphon-jet flushing action. A tank handle activates a flushing cycle, and the water flows from the tank and enters the rim of the bowl. Small holes in the rim are angled to allow the water to create the vortex. The vortex (swirl) begins a siphoning action to evacuate waste from the bowl. The jet stream exits the rim and thrusts into the passageway of the toilet providing the initial thrust in the flushing process.

The water supply is located on the left side of all toilets. The stop and escutcheon are installed the same for a toilet as for other fixtures. The water is connected to a toilet using a a tank supply. A tank supply is a chrome-plated soft copper tubing having a flat end that connects the stop to the fill valve. More modern supply lines are compression fit, plastic tube, with some having a braided stainless steel sleeve that protects the line from swelling and bursting. The toilet is installed onto the closet (toilet) flange and sealed with a wax ring. Some wax seals have a plastic accessory called a horn molded into the wax.

Toilet ADA Requirements: Handicap fixtures must comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). The tank handle of an ADA-compliant toilet must be located on the side of the tank that has the greatest distance from a sidewall. A handle located on the top of a tank typically meets ADA handle location regulations. The height of a toilet bowl from the floor, which includes the seat, is regulated by code. ADA codes dictate that the minimum height from a floor to a toilet seat is 16-1/2”; the maximum is 19-1/2”.

Toilet Piping Locations: The outlet distance of a standard toilet is 12” from the finished wall located behind the toilet (back wall). Lesser used 10” and 14” rough toilets are available in some toilet designs. Typically, one-piece toilets have different water rough-in location requirements than two-piece toilets. When selecting a one-piece toilet, always request the manufacturer’s data sheet, known as a roughin sheet, to confirm the water and drain pipes’ installation locations.

Toilet Bowl Shapes & Seats: Residential toilets have round style bowls. Elongated bowls installed in many homes are usually considered a fixture upgrade. Codes require that an elongated (oval) bowl design be installed in commercial applications. When selecting an elongated bowl in place of a round bowl, be sure to check your local codes pertaining to the minimum clearance in front of a toilet. Codes require that commercial seats be an open front type and not have a lid.

How To Replace and Install a Toilet

Fixing a Noisy Toilet & Other Problems with Fluidmaster

Lavatory sink

Also known as a lavatory, lav, or basin. Many types, shapes, and colors are available. Many homebuilders install cultured marble solid surface countertops with pre-molded sink basins, so the plumber does not install a separate sink. Other models of lavatory sinks include drop-in, under-mount, and vessel (similar to bowl setting on the countertop fed by a separate counter mounted faucet), The stub-out piping serving a lavatory is either 1 – 1/4” or 1 -1/2”. Most residential lavatories use a pop-up drain assembly. The overflow drain on a residential lavatory is an integral feature provided by the sink manufacturer.

- **Lavatory ADA Requirements:** Many lavatories are sold specifically for ADA compliance, but they are used more for commercial applications. ADA requirements require specific codes relating to the countertop height from the floor, the knee space under the sink, and the distances from the side and back walls.
- **Lavatory Styles:** Lavatory sinks are ordered based on shape, size, color, and mounting requirements, as well as the number of faucet holes and the distance between them.
  - **One-Piece:** Cultured marble or other approved material, incorporates the countertop and sink being formed as one unit.
  - **Drop-in:** A typical residential home utilizes a drop-in style lavatory that is either round or oval. A drop-in type lavatory sink requires a specific size hole cut into the countertop for the particular sink to be installed into the hole.
  - **Under Counter Mount:** Considered an upgrade, under counter mounted sinks attach to the underside of finish grade holes based on templates of the sink in granite, composite, and other hard countertops. While some of these sinks are secured with retaining clip, many rely on modern adhesive caulks to adhere them to the countertop and support their full weight during use.

- **Pedestal:** A pedestal sink is a wall-hung sink with a decorative vertical leg known as a pedestal. The bowl is supported with brackets that are anchored to pieces of wood installed in the wall framing. The pedestal is not designed to be the sole support of the basin (bowl), but instead conceals the drain piping below the sink while providing a decorative styling.

- **Lavatory Faucets:** A lavatory faucet installs onto a plumbing fixture with various methods depending on the faucet type and manufacturer's design. They can be installed in either fixture mount style sinks or deck mount (through the countertop) applications. The standard, and most common, lavatory sink has a 4" hole spread between the hot and cold handles. The term spread refers to the distance between the hot and cold faucet inlets. The two most common handle designs are a single-handle and a two-handle faucet. The middle hole of a three-hole lavatory sink is located in the center in the sink to receive the drainage operating assembly (pop-up) and/or a faucet spout connection.
- **Lavatory Drains:** The drain assembly for a lavatory faucet is known as a pop-up. The pop-up assembly consists of several different operating pieces that function as one unit. The pop-up rod is inserted through the faucet within the spout and connects to a linkage assembly below the sink that operates the pop-up plunger. All lavatory sink pop-up assemblies are 1 -1/4" tubular size. Most lavatories have an overflow port to eliminate water from rising over the rim of the fixture.

How To Install a Bathroom Vanity

Bathtub

Bathtubs are also known simply as tubs. A standard tub in a home is 5-0" in length and averages 30" wide. The depth of water a tub can hold varies with each specific tub design. Some tubs are sold separately, while others are sold with wall kits as a one-piece tub and shower unit or with various whirlpool features. A one-piece tub and shower unit is a fiberglass tub molded with the walls as a single unit. A tub is typically installed during the rough-in phase of a project. However, some drop-in style tubs, whirlpool tubs, and large-capacity garden tubs, are installed on top of tile or other solid surface are installed after the finished surface is complete.

The drain location is typically on one end of the tub that is known as the head wall. This is usually the same wall where the faucet is located and tubs are selected based on a left-hand or right-hand head wall design. The bottom surface of a tub slopes toward the drain. Every tub has an overflow hole (port) where a waste and overflow is installed.

- **Bathtub Faucets:** A tub faucet is intended to fill a tub. A tub faucet can either be deck-mounted or installed in a wall. Deck-mounted faucets are common for large-capacity tubs and whirlpool tubs. A faucet serving a tub or a shower is commonly referred to as a tub valve. Tub/shower valves can be used for tubs without a shower by installing a plug or cap in the shower riser port.
- **Tub & Shower Faucets:** A tub and shower combination faucet is capable of providing water for bathing or showering with the use of a diverter. Many different designs are available to divert the water flowing through a tub spout to flow through a showerhead. Diversion methods of a single-handle tub and shower faucet use either a diverter style tub spout or a push button diverter usually located directly below the faucet handle. A three-handle Tub and shower faucet design uses the middle handle as the diverter.
- **Bathtub Drains:** A bathtub drain assembly is called a bath waste and overflow (BW&O). A bathtub has an overflow port hole and a drain port that are always connected and installed as a pair (usually aligned with each other). Large capacity whirlpool tubs are more likely to have the holes in varying locations than a standard bathtub.

Installing a 1-Handle Posi-Temp Shower Valve: Copper to Copper

Installation – Sterling Ensemble Medley

Shower

Not part of a tub and shower combination.

- **Shower ADA Requirements:** ADA-compliant shower bases have a lower or no threshold and a larger square foot area than a typical non-handicap shower base. Many shower designs use a seat within the shower, and most handicap shower designs must have a seat. If a seat is constructed in a tiled shower on a wood floor, the plumber must provide waterproofing (ex: PVC liner) to the seat as well as the shower base. One-piece shower units that have a seat are typically premolded into the design of the shower.

- **Shower Faucets:** A shower faucet is intended to serve a shower head. Shower faucets and tub valves are interchangeable, however a combination tub/shower valve that does not incorporate an integrated diverter may be used with the tub port plugged or capped.
- **Shower Drains:** A shower base constructed on a wooden, and sometimes concrete, floor prepared to be covered with ceramic tile requires a safety pan. Most safety pans use a polyvinyl chloride (PVC) liner. A three-piece shower drain is required to ensure that water does not seep around the drain. The threaded top portion is adjustable to allow various tile thicknesses. The middle portion receives the top threaded portion and is bolted to the bottom portion. The bottom portion rests flush with the wood floor and connects the piping to the p-trap.

Oatey Shower Pan Liner Installation

Kitchen sink

The most common residential kitchen sinks have either a single bowl or a double bowl. Most kitchen sinks are surface mounted and are installed into a countertop during the trim-out phase of construction. Surface-mounted sinks are also known as self-rimming sinks and typically have holes for installing the faucet directly onto the sink. Solid surface countertops can utilize a sink mounted from under the countertop and incorporate deck mounted faucets. The common types of kitchen sinks used in residential construction are stainless steel and cast iron. The weight of a cast iron sink provides the necessary stability to maintain its permanent position on the countertop and does not require retainer clips when installed with an appropriate adhesive caulk. A plumber applies caulking to the edge of the cutout area of the countertop and places the cast iron sink into the hole. A stainless steel sink requires the sink to be fastened to the countertop using fastening clips provided. A kitchen sink can also serve a garbage disposal and dishwasher

- **Kitchen Faucets:** A kitchen faucet is usually installed before installing a kitchen sink. A kitchen faucet has a swivel spout that allows the water flow to be used in each bowl of a kitchen sink. The most common type of kitchen faucet requires a sink to have three faucet holes that are 4” apart or 8” from the hot and cold water supply connections to the faucet. Most kitchen sinks are offered as a three-hole design, but many popular faucet designs have a pull-out spout that is also the spray unit. If a separate handheld sprayer is used, a four-hole model sink must be selected. Most pull-out spout faucets are manufactured with an integral check valve. The center hole of a three-hole sink is normally aligned with the center of the sink.
- **Kitchen Sink Drains:** The drainage system serving a kitchen sink is connected to the fixture with a basket strainer. Regardless of the type or style of kitchen sink, the connection of the drainage system is the same, and all have 1 -1/2” drain connections. A rubber gasket is placed over the basket strainer from under the sink. A fiber (cardboard)-type gasket is placed between the tightening nut and rubber gasket.

Delta Faucets-How to Install a Single Handle Kitchen Faucet

Installing a Pfister 2-Handle Kitchen Faucet with a Sidespray – Harbor Collection

How-to Install a Stainless Steel Drop-In Sink | Moen Installation Video

How-to Install a Stainless Steel Undermount Kitchen Sink | Moen Installation

Laundry Sink

Also known as a laundry tray or utility sink. They are typically installed in the same room as a washing machine, or in a garage or workshop. Two most common types of laundry sink
designs are wall mounted, which requires a plumber to install wood backing in the
wall during the rough-in and a hanger bracket installed during trim-out; or with the four legs secured to the floor which requires a drill to install anchors into the floor.

- **Laundry Sink Faucets:** Laundry tub faucets usually have a 4” spread design and most laundry sink faucets have a swivel spout. Some laundry sink faucets have a hose thread on the outlet portion of a spout to allow a garden hose to be connected. For a hose-end spout to be legally installed, it must have a vacuum breaker to prevent backflow into the potable water supply.
- **Laundry Sink Drains:** The minimum size drain allowed by code to serve a laundry sink is 1 -1/2”. Most quality types of laundry sink basket strainers have a removable strainer. Because a laundry sink can receive discharge from a washing machine, a removable strainer should be installed.

How to Install the UTILATUB® Laundry/Utility Tub

Bidet

A bidet is a personal hygiene fixture that is usually matched in style and color with, and placed adjacent to, a toilet. A bidet's faucet and drain assembly are sold based on the fixture design and typically sold as a pair with the toilet. The water supply must be protected against backflow with a vacuum breaker assembly. The water supply serving a bidet is typically a 3/8" supply tube similar to a lavatory. The base of a bidet, like a toilet, typically has two mounting holes to anchor the bidet to the floor.

- **Bidet Faucets:** A bidet faucet must be compatible with the fixture based on the faucet hole design for installing a particular faucet and a vacuum breaker if required. A vacuum breaker is required by code if the hygiene sprayer is located in the bowl area of a bidet because it is below the flood level rim of the bidet.
- **Bidet Drains:** A bidet's drain assembly is very similar to a lavatory's pop-up assembly. Most bidets that use vacuum breakers have a dedicated hole in the fixture while others are served with the backflow device installed in the piping system.

11.6: Plumbing for Appliances

Appliances are a vital part of a functioning residential dwelling, and some appliances connect to plumbing systems. Some appliances require a plumber to install the piping systems during the rough-in phase of construction, while other appliances are installed by a plumber during the trim-out phase of construction.

Plumbing Connections for Appliances

APPLIANCE	COLD WATER	HOT WATER	DRAIN
Garbage Disposal	**No**	**No**	**No**
Dishwasher	**No**	**Yes**	**Yes**
Icemaker	**Yes**	**No**	**No**
Washing Machine	**Yes**	**Yes**	**Yes**

Dishwashers

A plumber normally installs a dishwasher during the trim-out phase of construction, typically at the same time as the sink and garbage disposer. A dishwasher receives hot water from the same water source that serves the kitchen sink. Many codes require that a dishwasher drain hose be routed through an air gap device to prevent wastewater from flowing from the sink into the dishwasher.

The water supply piping to a dishwasher is typically 3/8” OD tubing, with the hot water supply routed from under the kitchen sink. The drain hose from the dishwasher connects to either a dedicated connection of a garbage disposer or tailpiece. A dishwasher has leveling legs that can be adjusted to accommodate the opening height from the floor to the underside of the dishwasher.

Although dishwashers can connect to a kitchen sink drain with a special “Wye” fitting, most dishwashers discharge through garbage disposals at a designated dishwasher connection located on the side of a disposer. If a hose end is not compatible with the garbage disposer, a boot is used for the connection. A rubber dishwasher boot requires a small piece of copper to be inserted into the boot and the dishwasher hose, and then all connections are sealed with hose clamps.

Whirlpool Dishwasher Removal and Installation

Garbage Disposers

A garbage disposer is a motorized appliance that is activated manually with electrical current. It has an internal rotating flywheel to shred food waste which is discharged into the drainage system. The horsepower of the motor determines the capabilities of the garbage disposer. The most common HP sizes for residential applications range from 1/3” to 3/4”. A garbage disposer is commonly installed in a kitchen sink with a specially designed mounting assembly where a basket strainer would normally be installed. This multi-piece assembly consists of a sink flange that is inserted and sealed into the sink drain outlet where a basket strainer would normally be installed. The rubber gasket creating the seal between the disposer and the mounting assembly also serves as a noise reduction item. A garbage disposer has a designated port to accept the dishwasher drain hose.

Biodegradable products can be added to a septic tank to stimulate the decomposition of food waste within the septic tank. If a homeowner does not add the biodegradable solution, the food waste will settle to the bottom of the tank.

How to Install / Remove a Garbage Disposal – InSinkErator

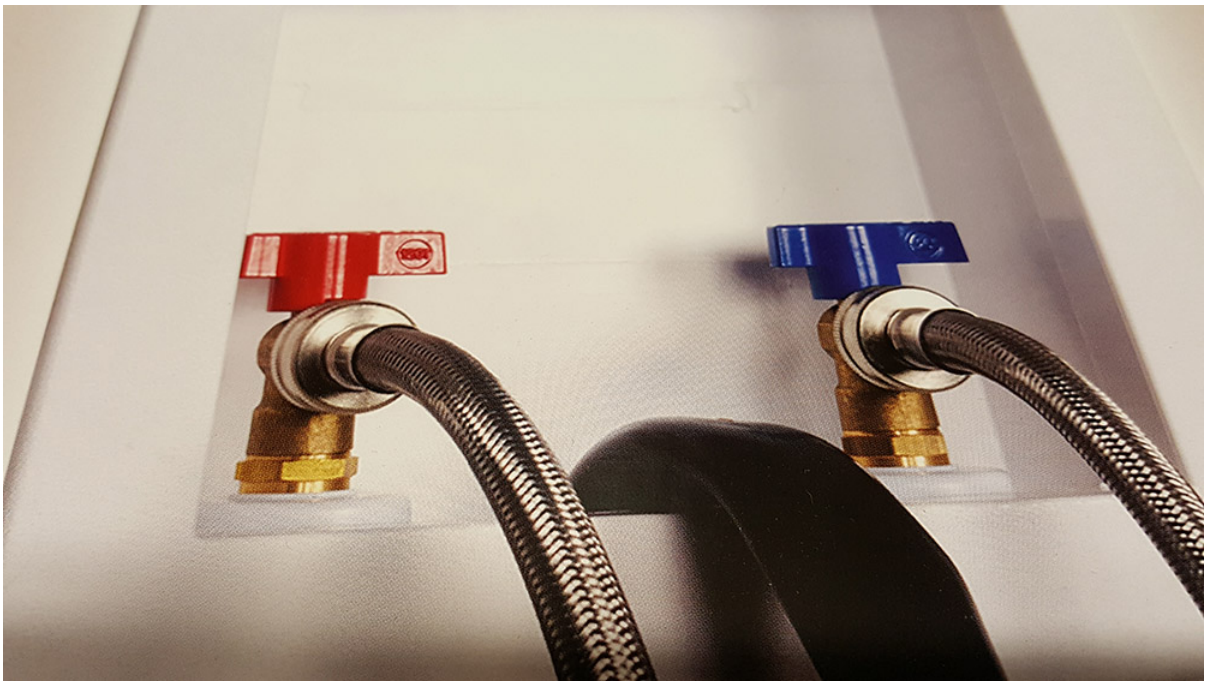
Garbage Disposal Repair | How to Fix a Garbage Disposal – InSinkErator

Reset the Overload Protector on InSinkErator Garbage Disposal

Washing Machine Boxes

A washing machine box is used to provide hot water, cold water, and a drain connection in one central location. Most codes also require that the smallest size water supply that can be installed serving a washing machine is 1/2” (5/8”OD). Hose end style valves are integrated into the box’s design to provide hot and cold supply water to the washing machine. Traditional stops with rubber

washers are common in residential applications, but 1/4 turn ball valve stops are becoming more commonly used by contractors and over time are more reliable. A typical residential washing machine box is manufactured to be recessed in a wall cavity with a hub to receive 2” plastic pipe because most codes dictate that the minimum size drain that can be installed serving a washing machine is 2”.



Washer Box by Clifford Rutherford is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Icemaker Boxes

A plumber routes the cold water piping to the refrigerator area and installs an icemaker box as the termination point of the potable water supply. The box is installed between two vertical wood studs and near the floor during the rough-in phase of construction. A plumber installs 1/2” pipe to the icemaker box and connects the piping to the angle valve provided with the box. The outlet of the valve that is purchased with the box has a 1/4” OD compression connection to allow the compatible tubing of the refrigerator to connect with the icemaker valve.

11.7: Water Heating

Conventional Water Heating Systems

The most common residential water heater has a 40 or 50 gallon storage tank capacity. They are available in electric, natural gas, and propane (LPG) models. The height and diameter of a water heater varies with the gallon capacity. When selecting water heaters, it is important to know the measurements of the space the appliance will occupy, and to check the water heater manufacturer specifications and codes for space requirements for ventilation, clearances, and other installation requirements. The shorter versions water heaters are known as a “low-boy”. that can fit in closet spaces or under stairs, or as a “squat” water heater that can fit under countertops. Squat water heaters are generally offered in electric configurations ranging from 5 to 40 gallons, and gas is not used due to ventilation and carbon monoxide concerns.

All water heaters must be installed per local codes and manufacturer instructions:

- An isolation valve must be installed on the cold water piping near the inlet.
- A typical residential water heater has 3/4” male or female threaded water supply connections.
- Most codes dictate that any water heater located above a finished area must be installed in a safety pan.
- Most relief valve connections of a residential water heater are 3/4” female and require a plumber to install a 3/4” male adapter.

Electric Water Heaters

An electric water heater only requires a plumber to connect the hot and cold water piping from the rough-in stub-outs to the designated inlet and outlet connection. They do not require venting or gas piping and are less expensive to purchase. Most codes allow the safety pan for an electric water heater to be plastic due to the lack of heat generated externally from the water heater in comparison to gas fired models.

A standard residential electric water heater is classified as a 240-volt, 4500-watt, non-simultaneous water heater. Models with faster recovery rates may have higher wattage elements. The higher the wattage rating, the faster a water heater can heat water. Although most electric water heaters have two elements, each rated at 4500 watts, a non-simultaneous heating cycle has only one of the elements operating at a time. Each wire providing electricity to a water heater is known as a leg. The two different wires (legs) that connect to the high-limit device are identified as line voltage one and two. One wire eventually provides 120 volts of electricity to one side of a heating element and the second wire eventually completes the circuit by providing an additional 120 volts to the same element.The screws that secure the wire connection to the electrical devices are known as terminations, poles, or posts.

No water heater should ever have the ignited gas or electricity energized before filling the system with water and removing all trapped air from the system.

Electric Water Heater Components and Their Functions

Temperature and Pressure (T & P)Relief Valve- Electric, gas & solar applications, relieves at150 psig and/or 210° F. (Temperature (only) relief valves are used on the rooftop collector panels of solar water systems).

Mythbusters- water heater

Dip Tube- As heat rises, and the outlet supply of hot water to the fixtures feeds from the hottest point at the top of the water heater, manufacturer install a device known as a dip tube into the cold water connection of a top-fed water heater to route the incoming cold water to the bottom of the heater. If a dip tube were not used, the incoming cold water would mix with the hot water located in the top of the water heater, cooling the exiting water during use.

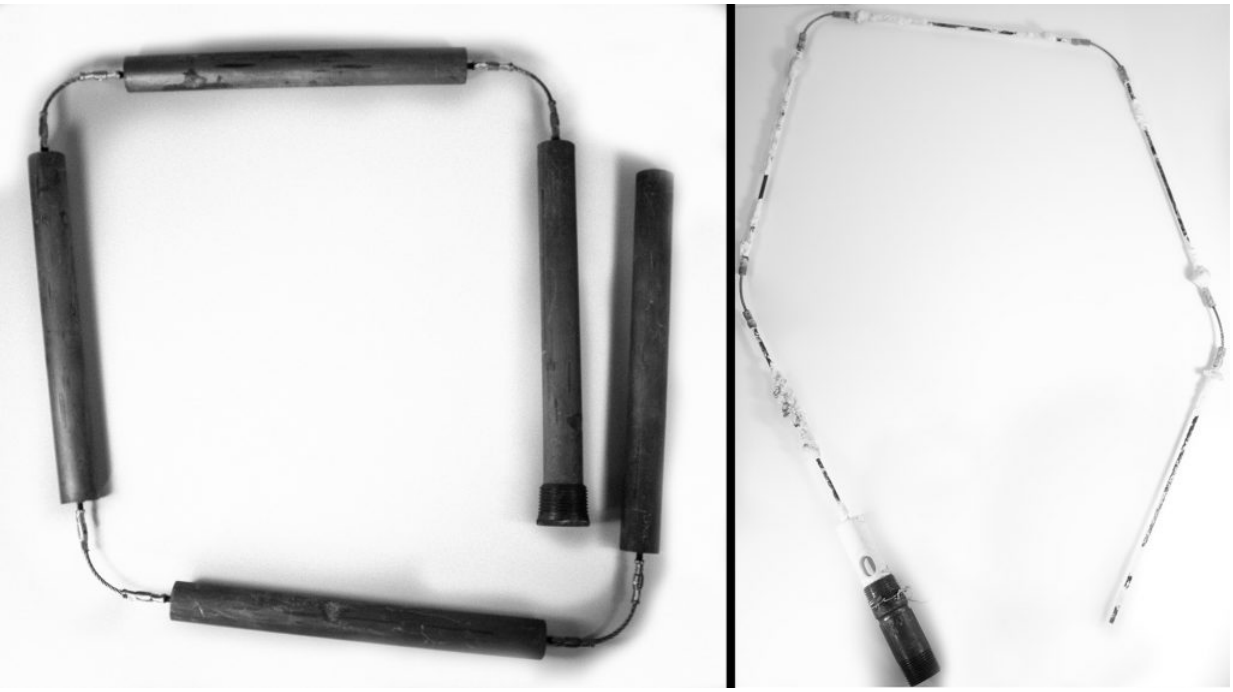
Drain– Used to flush the water heater’s storage tank during maintenance.

Ball valve- Used to shut off the supply water to the tank.

Mixing Valve- Allows cold water to enter hot water stream to temper over-temp water to prevent scalding. Mixing valves are normally required to be installed on solar water heating systems as temperatures can potentially reach in excess of 160°.

Tank Anode Rod- A residential water heater storage tank is manufactured with carbon steel, with most common residential water heaters incorporating a very thin coat of porcelain enamel called a “glass” lining, designed to fill every internal crevice created by the manufacturing process of the tank, to prevent the carbon steel tank from corroding. However, over time, this lining breaks down

and the steel tank begins to corrode. An anode rod is a sacrificial device that dissolves (corrodes) over a period of time. An anode rod is installed by the manufacturer to prevent from rusting and corrosion of the inside of the tank due to glass lining imperfections or minor damage during shipping and handling. Magnesium-based and aluminum rods are more vulnerable to rust and minerals that would normally attack the steel walls of a tank and attract corrosives to attack the anode rod instead of the tank.



New versus Expended Anode Rod by Cory Early is licensed under CC BY 4.0

Top Access Cover– The thermostat and the red button are located in here. The upper heating element is also found here.

Bottom Access Cover– The lower thermostat and heating element are located here.

Upper Thermostat– Limits the temperature that the element will heat the water up to. Both, upper and lower, thermostats are secured in place and held against the surface of the tank with a retainer clip, keeping the thermostat in contact with the external portion of the storage tank. Most safety standards do not allow a plumber to set the temperature above 120 degrees Fahrenheit to prevent scalding. The upper thermostat of a seven-pole design only has three posts. This three-post design combined with the four posts of the high limit switch is how the seven-pole design is recognized. The upper thermostat has a temperature setting feature that is typically either identified alphabetically from A through D, or identified as warm, hot, and very hot.

Replacing Upper Thermostat

Lower Thermostat- The lower thermostat only has two posts and numbered 1 and 2. It also has a temperature setting feature that is the same design as the upper thermostat. Like the upper thermostat, lower thermostats can be adjustable and have similarly marked adjustment points.

Hi-Limit Device (Red Button Over Temperature Thermostat)– The high-limit device halts the electrical current to the thermostats and elements if an unsafe water temperature is present. Most high-limit devices have a reset button designed to pop out if the temperature reaches 190°. These devices can be reset once the temperature of the tank cools below the “pop-off” temperature.

Heating Element- Elements convert electrical energy to heat energy and transfer heat to the water in the tank. They are rated in watts and selected for tanks according to tank size and recovery rate. Residential electric water heating elements are usually a screw-in type, but bolt-in types are used for certain water heater models. The elements can vary in length, with 12” being the typical length provided by a manufacturer in most water heaters. The electrical voltage and wattage ratings of the element are indicated by a manufacturer on the element so its identification of replacement parts specifications is available on the exterior.

Lined and Dielectric Pipe Nipples- Many water heaters are manufactured with pipe nipples that are lined with corrosive-resistant material such as PEX. These pipe nipples are manufactured to resist corrosion due to electrolysis from joining dissimilar metals to the iron tank (copper to iron = rust). Brass pipe fittings can also be used between iron pipe fittings and copper to resist electrolysis. A plumber must take precautions when connecting copper tube to a lined nipple as heating the lining of the pipe nipple directly with a torch or by connecting a fitting that has been soldered and not allowed to cool can melt the internal lining of the nipple. Brass to copper unions provide the same benefit in non-concealed applications.

Expansion Tank- Every water heating system must be protected against dangerous occurrences that exist when water is heated. As a heating cycle occurs, water expands and can cause the pressure relief valve to begin dripping. Expansion tanks are installed, mainly in solar water systems, to absorb the expansion of a system. An expansion tank used for a potable hot water system has an internal rubber membrane known as a bladder. Most codes require that an expansion tank be installed near a water heater to protect the piping system from high pressure caused by the heating cycle.

Gas Water Heaters

Natural gas and propane (LPG) are the two types of gas used for water heating. A water heater designed for natural gas cannot be used with propane unless the particular water heater can be converted. The internal gas regulating orifice is different for each type of gas. The venting requirements of a gas water heater are dictated by code. The exhaust fumes from a gas water heater contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide fumes are odorless and can kill occupants of a home or building. Conventional gas water heaters are vented atmospherically, that is, to the exterior of the building. Atmospheric water heater venting must terminate in specific locations through, and heights above a roof. Gas water heaters must have adequate space around the water heater and replacement air to create proper draft conditions that allow the fumes to be exhausted to the exterior of the building. If adequate air is not provided in the room where an atmospheric vented water heater is located, the exhaust fumes could enter the occupied space.

Selecting a gas water heater based on its capabilities requires manufacturer's specifications for the specific appliance and knowledge of the load demand. The recovery rate is the most important aspect of determining if a certain gas water heater is capable of being installed for a specific home or use. Gas water heaters are rated by the gallons of hot water they can produce. One **British Thermal Unit (BTU)** is the amount of heat required to raise one pound of water by one degree Fahrenheit. One gallon of water weighs 8.33 pounds, and 8.33 btus are required to raise the temperature of one gallon of water by one degree Fahrenheit. **Temperature rise** is the difference between the incoming cold water and the desired temperature expected from a water heater. Temperature rise determines the capabilities of a certain Btu rating of a gas water heater. A length of time is used to clarify the recovery capabilities of a gas water heater, and **gallons per hour (gph)** is the most common method used in rating a hot water heater.

- Codes vary pertaining to the gas supply connections and venting regulations.
- A gas water heater uses a metal safety pan.
- The gas supply configuration is fairly consistent with most residential water heaters: black iron pipe or approved polyurethane tubing, brass fittings, gas-cock, flex supply line, and regulator

Gas Regulators

A gas regulator is an automated device that controls the gas flow to a burner assembly. The gas supply pipe is connected to the gas regulator which regulates the flow of gas to the burner A thermocouple must sense a pilot flame in order to allow the gas to flow through a gas regulator. The design of a gas regulator is based on safety, and most codes do not allow anyone not certified to repair a gas regulator to disassemble one for repair. Another feature of the regulator is to control the gas flow to a pilot flame. The gas regulator for a residential gas water heater typically has a 1/2" female threaded connection.

How to Relight a Gas Water Heater Pilot Light

Tankless Water Heaters

A tankless heater design can be suitable for many residential applications. Water flow is regulated to ensure that the desired temperature leaves the heater. They are becoming more desirable and are considered environmentally friendly. Tankless models are also known as an instantaneous water heaters.

The two basic types of tankless water heaters are interior or exterior, defining whether the installation location is inside or outside of the building structure. Tankless water heaters are available in electric models for interior applications. Tankless water heaters can be installed inside or outside a building, but units installed outside must be gas. The units are not interchangeable. Interior units require venting of the flue gas and exterior units may require freeze protection in certain climates.

Solar Water Heaters

Although a solar thermal water heating system can save a residence up to a 40% savings on utility bills, the initial investment to install a solar water heating system may deter many homeowners. Federal, and sometimes state, tax credits are available for installing alternate energy systems and utility savings over time are a good return on investment (ROI).

Solar water systems use solar collector panels, usually mounted on the roof to heat the system water. When the temperature of the water in the collector reaches a specific higher temperature than the water in the tank, a pump circulates the cooler water from the tank which pushes the hotter water in the roof panel back into the tank until the temperature of the panel and the temperature in the tank are equal.

The location and angle of the solar panel (orientation and tilt for optimal sun exposure) is crucial to obtaining optimal efficiency of the entire system. Most solar systems are directly connected to gas or a single electric heating element to provide adequate hot water during non-solar heating periods.

Diagnosing Common Water Heater Problems

Water heaters should be flushed annually to remove contaminates and scale from the tank. Anode rod should be inspected every 2 years and replaced approximately every 5 years, or sooner if conditions show significant corrosion of the rod. Troubleshooting gas and electric water heaters must be performed by qualified individuals. Basic electrical knowledge must be known to safely troubleshoot an electric water heater, and a plumber must have an electrical voltage/amperage meter to diagnose and service an electric water heater. Always remember that a water heater must be always be filled with water before igniting the gas supply or electrically energizing the system and only a certified technician can repair gas regulators.

Electric Water Heater Diagnostics

SYMPTOM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	POSSIBLE SOLUTION
No hot water	No electricity from source	Check breaker
No hot water	Electrical problems with thermostats	Test and replace appropriate thermostat/s
No hot water	Failed heating element(s)	Test and replace appropriate element/s
Little hot water	Dip tube failure	Inspect dip tube and replace if necessary
Little hot water	Lower thermostat or element failure	Replace lower thermostat and/or element
Little hot water	Thermostat/s failure	Test and replace appropriate thermostat/s
Water too hot	Thermostat/s failure	Test and replace appropriate thermostat/s
Rest button tripped	Water too hot	Test and replace appropriate thermostat/s
Rotten egg smell of water	Expended anode rod	Inspect and replace
Popping noise when heating	Scale build-up on element(s)	Replace element(s)

Water Heater Not Heating? Thermostat Testing

Heating Element Diagnostic Procedure

1. **Switch off the power** to the water heater at the main electrical panel.
2. Locate the electrical access panels, one near the base of the tank and one nearer the top (solar water systems only have one back-up element and thermostat located in the upper access). Beginning with the top element, remove the panel's screws with a screwdriver. Take off the panel and remove insulation behind it to uncover the heating element.
3. Disconnect either of the two electrical wires screwed into the element terminals. It is not necessary to disconnect both wires to test the element.
4. Set the multimeter or Ohmeter to read Ohms, and set the scale to RX1. Touch one probe to each of the two terminal screws. If the needle moves at all, or if there is any reading besides "infinity" on a digital readout, the element is good. If it doesn't move, or displays "infinity," no electricity is flowing through the element and it should be replaced.
5. Complete replacement or repairs as necessary. Reconnect the wire to the element terminal. Replace the insulation and reinstall the access panel.
6. Repeat the process on the bottom element. Restore power to the water heater from the main electrical panel.

How to Replace an Electric Water Heater Heating Element

Gas Water Heater Diagnostics

SYMPTOM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	POSSIBLE SOLUTION
No gas to pilot	No gas from meter or gas cock	Turned off at meter or gas cock
No gas to pilot	No gas from regulator	Debris in regulator. Clean or replace defective regulator
No gas to pilot	Faulty regulator	Replace regulator
No gas to pilot	Crimped pilot tube	Repair or replace tube
No gas to pilot	Leak in pilot tube	Replace tube
No pilot flame	No gas flow from regulator	Debris in regulator. Clean or replace defective regulator
No pilot flame	Defective thermocouple	Replace thermocouple
No pilot flame	Air in gas piping	Purge air from piping
No gas to burner	Defective regulator	Replace regulator
No gas to burner	Crimped burner tube	Repair or replace burner tube
No gas to burner	Blockage in burner tube	Remove tube and clean
No gas to burner	Remove and clean	Run water to cool tank
No gas to burner	Defective high-limit device	Replace device or regulator
Temperature and Pressure (T&P) relief valve leaking	Water is too hot	Run water to cool tank
Temperature and Pressure (T&P) relief valve leaking	Defective relief valve	Replace relief valve
Temperature and Pressure (T&P) relief valve leaking	Excessive pressure	Install expansion tank
Temperature and Pressure (T&P) relief valve leaking	Excessive pressure	Check pressure regulator valve to system supply

SYMPTOM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	POSSIBLE SOLUTION
Low water temperature	Thermostat set too low	Adjust temperature setting on thermostat
Low water temperature	Dip tube failure	Inspect and replace if necessary
Low water temperature	Defective thermostat	Test and replace appropriate thermostat/s
Slow recovery time	Sediment in tank	Drain and flush tank
Slow recovery time	Dirty burner assembly	Clean burner assembly
Slow recovery time	Poor flame	Adjust burner air supply
Slow recovery time	Poor flame	Supply more combustion air
Not enough hot water	Insufficient size heater	Calculate demand load and replace with an appropriate sized water heating system
Not enough hot water	See low water temperature and slow recovery symptoms	See low water temperature and slow recovery symptoms
Popping / banging noises	Calcium or sediment build up	Drain and flush tank
Banging noise	Check valve slamming when a faucet or valve is being opened or closed	Install a shock absorbing device
Fume odor	Poor draft on flue system	Examine flue pipe installation and ensure termination location provides sufficient draft
Gas odor	Leak on piping system	Soap test all piping joints and supply lines for leaks and repair as required
Soot build up	Poor draft on flue system	See fume odor, install a draft hood fan
Soot build up	Insufficient combustion air	Install air supply ducts or vents
Soot build up	Poor burner flame	Clean and adjust burner
Flame back flash	Negative air pressure	Isolate heater air

12: Building Structures and Functions

Buildings are constructed to support and protect activity and artifacts. Buildings may incorporate natural structures, such as the document storage and server farms housed in rooms within a large, underground limestone mine owned by Iron Mountain in Pennsylvania. While human buildings are quite prominent, many animals engage in building activities for nests, hives, etc.

While buildings may be relatively simple structures, most include other systems providing quite extensive functionality, including:

- Electricity distribution and lighting, typically using alternating current of 110 to 220 volts.
- Water distribution and heating for human use.
- Waste disposal systems for solid or liquid wastes.
- Heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems.
- Internal transportation systems, including elevators, escalators, and stairways.
- Kitchens for food preparation and storage.
- Security systems to identify and discourage intruders.
- Telecommunications systems for data transfer.
- Garages for parking vehicles.

Charging stations for battery electric and plug-in vehicles.
Buildings also have systems for emergencies and security. Fire alarms are often required by regulation. Signage for evacuation and emergency lighting is common. First aid supplies are common. Video cameras for security purposes are often installed.

Index

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: BPM 1020 - Maintenance for Residential Property Management (Phillips and Roberts, 2021)

Webpages: 67

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY 4.0: 65.7% (44 pages)
- Undeclared: 29.9% (20 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 3% (2 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 1.5% (1 page)

By Page

- BPM 1020 - Maintenance for Residential Property Management (Phillips and Roberts, 2021) - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - Course Description - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - About this Book - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Maintenance Management Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.1: Maintenance Categories - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.2: Work Order Process - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 1.3: Parts and Material Resources - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 2: Building Maintenance and Conservation - *Undeclared*
    - 2.1: Building Maintenance and Conservation - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.2: Conservation Policy - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 3: Maintenance Staffing - *Undeclared*
  - 4: Maintenance Processes and Projects - *Undeclared*
    - 4.1: Managing Project Value, Budgets, and Costs - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 5: Maintenance Employees Rights and Protection- OSHA - *Undeclared*
    - 5.1: Employees Health and Safety - *Undeclared*
    - 5.2: Employer Requirements - *Undeclared*
  - 6: Safety and Protective Equipment- - *Undeclared*
    - 6.1: Personal Protective Equipment - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.2: Eye and Face Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.3: Hearing Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.4: Head Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.5: Hand Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.6: Respiratory Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.7: Foot Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.8: Tool and Shop Safety - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.9: Ladder Safety and Fall Protection - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 6.10: Getting Acquainted With the Property - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 7: First Aid - *Undeclared*
    - 7.1: Safety and Injury Prevention - *Undeclared*
  - 8: Maintenance Hand and Power Tools - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.1: Tool Choices and Applications - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.2: Measuring, Marking, Leveling and Layout Tools - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.3: Nails, Hammers and Pneumatic Nailers - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.4: Threaded Fasteners, Drivers, Pliers and Wrenches - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.5: Saws - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.6: Drills and Accessories - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 8.7: Grinders, Sanders, and Accessories - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 9: Mathematics for Maintenance Techs - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.1: Required Math Concepts - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 9.2: Ohm's Law, Joules Law, and Series - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 9.2.1: Ohm's Law, Joules Law, and Series/Parallel Formulas - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 10: Electrical and Large Equipment - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 10.1: Electrical Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.1: Electrical Safety - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.2: Electrical Tools and Testing Equipment - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.3: Electrical Terminology and Lighting - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.4: Conduit, Boxes, and Wiring - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.5: Fuses and Breakers - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.6: Receptacle and Switch Wiring - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 10.1.7: Outdoor Wiring Considerations - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 11: Plumbing Systems - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 11.1: Piping and Fittings - *CC BY 4.0*